

HVAC and Electrical Upgrades
at Branch Ave and North Main
St Fire Stations

Project Specifications

Mechanical Specifications

MECHANICAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

<u>Division 23</u>	<u>Title</u>
230513	Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment
230518	Escutcheons for HVAC Piping
230548.13	Vibration Controls for HVAC
230553	Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment
230593	Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC
230713	Duct Insulation
230719	HVAC Piping Insulation
230923	BAS Master
230923	Direct Digital Control (DDC System for HVAC
232300	Refrigerant Piping
233113	Metal Ducts
233300	Air Duct Accessories
233346	Flexible Ducts
233423	HVAC Power Ventilators
237224	Dedicated Outdoor Air Systems
238126	VRV Split-System Ventilator
238127	VRF Split-System Air Conditioners

SECTION 230513

COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on alternating-current power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

1.2 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
 - 1. Motor controllers.
 - 2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
 - 3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
 - 4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet (1000 m) above sea level.
- B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.
- B. Efficiency: Premium efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.
- C. Service Factor: 1.15.
- D. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.
 - 1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.

2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.
- E. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.
- F. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- G. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.
- H. Insulation: Class F.
- I. Code Letter Designation:
 1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
 2. Motors Smaller Than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.
- J. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

2.4 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.
- B. Motors Used with Variable-Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.
 1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width-modulated inverters.
 2. Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
 3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
 4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.

2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors shall be the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
 1. Electronically Commutated Motor (ECM).
- B. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- C. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

(Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 230513

SECTION 230518

ESCUTCHEONS FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Escutcheons.
2. Floor plates.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. One-Piece, Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped steel with polished, chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- C. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- D. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish; concealed hinge; and spring-clip fasteners.

2.2 FLOOR PLATES

A. Split Floor Plates: Steel with concealed hinge.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
 1. Escutcheons for New Piping:
 - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece deep pattern.

- b. Insulated Piping: One-piece stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - c. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: split-plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - d. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.
- D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Using new materials, replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates.

END OF SECTION 230518

SECTION 230548.13

VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Elastomeric isolation pads.
2. Elastomeric isolation mounts.
3. Restrained elastomeric isolation mounts.
4. Open-spring isolators.
5. Housed-spring isolators.
6. Restrained-spring isolators.
7. Housed-restrained-spring isolators.
8. Pipe-riser resilient supports.
9. Resilient pipe guides.
10. Elastomeric hangers.
11. Spring hangers.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each vibration isolation device.
 1. Include design calculations for selecting vibration isolators.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION PADS

- A. Elastomeric Isolation Pads:
 1. Fabrication: Single or multiple layers of sufficient durometer stiffness for uniform loading over pad area.
 2. Size: Factory or field cut to match requirements of supported equipment.
 3. Pad Material: Oil and water resistant with elastomeric properties.
 4. Surface Pattern: Waffle pattern.
 5. Infused nonwoven cotton or synthetic fibers.
 6. Load-bearing metal plates adhered to pads.

2.2 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION MOUNTS

- A. Double-Deflection, Elastomeric Isolation Mounts:
 1. Mounting Plates:

- a. Top Plate: Encapsulated steel load transfer top plates, factory drilled and threaded with threaded studs or bolts.
 - b. Baseplate: Encapsulated steel bottom plates with holes provided for anchoring to support structure.
2. Elastomeric Material: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material.

2.3 OPEN-SPRING ISOLATORS

- A. Freestanding, Laterally Stable, Open-Spring Isolators:
 1. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
 2. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
 3. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
 4. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
 5. Baseplates: Factory-drilled steel plate for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Baseplates shall limit floor load to 500 psig (3447 kPa).
 6. Top Plate and Adjustment Bolt: Threaded top plate with adjustment bolt and cap screw to fasten and level equipment.

2.4 PIPE-RISER RESILIENT SUPPORT

- A. Description: All-directional, acoustical pipe anchor consisting of two steel tubes separated by a minimum 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) thick neoprene.
 1. Vertical-Limit Stops: Steel and neoprene vertical-limit stops arranged to prevent vertical travel in both directions.
 2. Maximum Load Per Support: 500 psig (3.45 MPa) on isolation material providing equal isolation in all directions.

2.5 RESILIENT PIPE GUIDES

- A. Description: Telescopic arrangement of two steel tubes or post and sleeve arrangement separated by a minimum 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) thick neoprene.
 1. Factory-Set Height Guide with Shear Pin: Shear pin shall be removable and reinsertable to allow for selection of pipe movement. Guides shall be capable of motion to meet location requirements.

2.6 SPRING HANGERS

- A. Combination Coil-Spring and Elastomeric-Insert Hanger with Spring and Insert in Compression:
 1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
 2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.

3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
6. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene. Steel-washer-reinforced cup to support spring and bushing projecting through bottom of frame.
7. Adjustable Vertical Stop: Steel washer with neoprene washer "up-stop" on lower threaded rod.
8. Self-centering hanger rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 VIBRATION CONTROL DEVICE INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate the location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork specified in Division 03 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- B. Installation of vibration isolators must not cause any change of position of equipment, piping, or ductwork resulting in stresses or misalignment.

END OF SECTION 230548.13

SECTION 230553

IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Equipment labels.
2. Warning signs and labels.
3. Pipe labels.
4. Duct labels.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

A. Plastic Labels for Equipment:

1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
2. Letter Color: White.
3. Background Color: Black.
4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F (71 deg C).
5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
7. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

B. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.

C. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch (A4) bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number, and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules) and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- B. Letter Color: Yellow.
- C. Background Color: Black.
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F (71 deg C).
- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
- F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
- G. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- H. Label Content: Include caution and warning information plus emergency notification instructions.

2.3 PIPE LABELS

- A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction according to ASME A13.1.
- B. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- C. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings; also include pipe size and an arrow indicating flow direction.
 - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
 - 2. Lettering Size: At least 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm) and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances.

2.4 DUCT LABELS

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm)] thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- B. Letter Color: White.
- C. Background Color: Black.
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F (71 deg C).

- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
- F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
- G. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- H. Duct Label Contents: Include identification of duct service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings; also include duct size and an arrow indicating flow direction.
 - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with duct system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each duct label to indicate flow direction.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

3.2 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

3.3 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Pipe Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
 - 1. Near each valve and control device.
 - 2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
 - 3. Near penetrations and on both sides of through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
 - 4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
 - 5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
 - 6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet (15 m) along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet (7.6 m) in areas of congested piping and equipment.
 - 7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.
- B. Pipe Label Color Schedule:

1. Refrigerant Piping: Black letters on a safety-orange background.

3.4 DUCT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install self-adhesive duct labels with permanent adhesive on air ducts in the following color codes:
 1. Blue: For cold-air supply ducts.
 2. Yellow: For hot-air supply ducts.
 3. Green: For exhaust-, outside-, relief-, return-, and mixed-air ducts.
- B. Locate labels near points where ducts enter into and exit from concealed spaces and at maximum intervals of 50 feet (15 m) in each space where ducts are exposed or concealed by removable ceiling system.

END OF SECTION 230553

SECTION 230593

TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Balancing Air Systems:
 - a. Constant-volume air systems.
 - b. Variable-air-volume systems.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.
- B. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.
- C. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- D. TABB: Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau.
- E. TAB Specialist: An independent entity meeting qualifications to perform TAB work.
- F. TDH: Total dynamic head.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. TAB Report: Documentation indicating that Work complies with ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6.7.2.3 - "System Balancing."

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Certified TAB reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. TAB Specialists Qualifications: Certified by AABC.
 1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC.
 2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC as a TAB technician.
- B. TAB Specialists Qualifications: Certified by **NEBB or TABB**.

- C. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6.7.2.3 - "System Balancing."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

(Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.
- B. Examine installed systems for balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are applicable for intended purpose and are accessible.
- C. Examine the approved submittals for HVAC systems and equipment.
- D. Examine design data including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.
- E. Examine ceiling plenums and underfloor air plenums used for supply, return, or relief air to verify that they are properly separated from adjacent areas. Verify that penetrations in plenum walls are sealed and fire-stopped if required.
- F. Examine equipment performance data including fan and pump curves.
 - 1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
 - 2. Calculate system-effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from the conditions used to rate equipment performance. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Duct Design." Compare results with the design data and installed conditions.
- G. Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.
- H. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.
- I. Examine HVAC equipment and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, filters are clean, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.

- J. Examine terminal units, such as variable-air-volume boxes, and verify that they are accessible and their controls are connected and functioning.
- K. Examine strainers. Verify that startup screens have been replaced by permanent screens with indicated perforations.
- L. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.
- M. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.
- N. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes strategies and step-by-step procedures for balancing the systems.
- B. Perform system-readiness checks of HVAC systems and equipment to verify system readiness for TAB work. Include, at a minimum, the following:
 - 1. Airside:
 - a. Duct systems are complete with terminals installed.
 - b. Volume, smoke, and fire dampers are open and functional.
 - c. Clean filters are installed.
 - d. Fans are operating, free of vibration, and rotating in correct direction.
 - e. Variable-frequency controllers' startup is complete and safeties are verified.
 - f. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
 - g. Ceilings are installed.
 - h. Windows and doors are installed.
 - i. Suitable access to balancing devices and equipment is provided.

3.3 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

- A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in **ASHRAE 111** and in this Section.
- B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.
 - 1. After testing and balancing, patch probe holes in ducts with same material and thickness as used to construct ducts.
 - 2. After testing and balancing, install test ports and duct access doors that comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
 - 3. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier, and finish according to Section 230713 "Duct Insulation,"

Section 230716 "HVAC Equipment Insulation," and Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."

- C. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.
- D. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in **inch-pound (IP)** units.

3.4 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Cross-check the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" duct layouts.
- C. For variable-air-volume systems, develop a plan to simulate diversity.
- D. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements.
- E. Check airflow patterns from the outdoor-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.
- F. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
- G. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
- H. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.
- I. Check for airflow blockages.
- J. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.
- K. Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.
- L. Verify that air duct system is sealed as specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts."

3.5 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
 - 1. Measure total airflow.
 - a. Set outside-air, return-air, and relief-air dampers for proper position that simulates minimum outdoor-air conditions.
 - b. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary, perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses to obtain total airflow.

- c. Where duct conditions are not suitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil traverse may be acceptable.
 - d. If a reliable Pitot-tube traverse or coil traverse is not possible, measure airflow at terminals and calculate the total airflow.
 2. Measure fan static pressures as follows:
 - a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
 - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet or through the flexible connection.
 - c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling system.
 - d. Report artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.
 3. Review Record Documents to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.
 4. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload occurs. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.
 - B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows.
 1. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.
 2. Adjust submain and branch duct volume dampers for specified airflow.
 3. Re-measure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted.
 - C. Adjust air inlets and outlets for each space to indicated airflows.
 1. Set airflow patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.
 2. Measure inlets and outlets airflow.
 3. Adjust each inlet and outlet for specified airflow.
 4. Re-measure each inlet and outlet after they have been adjusted.
- 3.6 TOLERANCES
- A. Set HVAC system's airflow rates and water flow rates within the following tolerances:
 1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: **Plus or minus 10 percent.**
 2. Air Outlets and Inlets: **Plus or minus 10 percent.**
 - B. Maintaining pressure relationships as designed shall have priority over the tolerances specified above.

3.7 FINAL REPORT

- A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.
 - 1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
 - 2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.
 - 3. Certify validity and accuracy of field data.
- B. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:
 - 1. Title page.
 - 2. Name and address of the TAB specialist.
 - 3. Project name.
 - 4. Project location.
 - 5. Architect's name and address.
 - 6. Engineer's name and address.
 - 7. Contractor's name and address.
 - 8. Report date.
 - 9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
 - 10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
 - 11. Summary of contents including the following:
 - a. Indicated versus final performance.
 - b. Notable characteristics of systems.
 - c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
 - 12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
 - 13. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer's name, type, size, and fittings.
 - 14. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
 - 15. Test conditions for fans and pump performance forms including the following:
 - a. Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
 - b. Conditions of filters.
 - c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
 - d. Face and bypass damper settings at coils.
 - e. Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
 - f. Inlet vane settings for variable-air-volume systems.
 - g. Settings for supply-air, static-pressure controller.
 - h. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.
 - 16. Motor Data:
 - a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
 - b. Horsepower and rpm.
 - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.

- d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
- e. Sheave make, size in inches (mm), and bore.
- f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches (mm).

17. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Total airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
- b. Total system static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
- c. Fan rpm.
- d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
- e. Filter static-pressure differential in inches wg (Pa).
- f. Preheat-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg (Pa).
- g. Cooling-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg (Pa).
- h. Heating-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg (Pa).
- i. Outdoor airflow in cfm (L/s).
- j. Return airflow in cfm (L/s).
- k. Outdoor-air damper position.
- l. Return-air damper position.
- m. Vortex damper position.

C. Fan Test Reports: For supply, return, and exhaust fans, include the following:

1. Fan Data:

- a. System identification.
- b. Location.
- c. Make and type.
- d. Model number and size.
- e. Manufacturer's serial number.
- f. Arrangement and class.
- g. Sheave make, size in inches (mm), and bore.
- h. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches (mm).

2. Motor Data:

- a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
- b. Horsepower and rpm.
- c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
- d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
- e. Sheave make, size in inches (mm), and bore.
- f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches (mm).
- g. Number, make, and size of belts.

3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Total airflow rate in cfm (L/s).

- b. Total system static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
 - c. Fan rpm.
 - d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
 - e. Suction static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
- D. Round, Flat-Oval, and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports: Include a diagram with a grid representing the duct cross-section and record the following:
 - 1. Report Data:
 - a. System and air-handling-unit number.
 - b. Location and zone.
 - c. Traverse air temperature in deg F (deg C).
 - d. Duct static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
 - e. Duct size in inches (mm).
 - f. Duct area in sq. ft. (sq. m).
 - g. Indicated airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
 - h. Indicated velocity in fpm (m/s).
 - i. Actual airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
 - j. Actual average velocity in fpm (m/s).
 - k. Barometric pressure in psig (Pa).
- E. Instrument Calibration Reports:
 - 1. Report Data:
 - a. Instrument type and make.
 - b. Serial number.
 - c. Application.
 - d. Dates of use.
 - e. Dates of calibration.

END OF SECTION 230593

SECTION 230713

DUCT INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following duct services:
 - 1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
 - 2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
 - 3. Indoor, concealed return located in unconditioned space.
 - 4. Indoor, exposed return located in unconditioned space.
 - 5. Indoor, concealed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
 - 6. Indoor, exposed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."
 - 2. Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for duct liners.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
 - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Duct Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule," and "Aboveground, Outdoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.

- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type III with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- G. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB. For duct and plenum applications, provide insulation with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

2.2 FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEMS

- A. Fire-Rated Blanket: High-temperature, flexible, blanket insulation with FSK jacket that is tested and certified to provide a 2-hour fire rating by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

2.3 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
- C. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.

2.4 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.
 - 1. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm (0.009 metric perm) at 43-mil (1.09-mm) dry film thickness.
 - 2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 82 deg C).
 - 3. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
 - 4. Color: White.

2.5 SEALANTS

- A. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
 - 1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 - 2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
 - 4. Color: Aluminum.
- B. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:
 - 1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 - 2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
 - 4. Color: White.

2.6 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
 - 1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
 - 2. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
 - 3. Vinyl Jacket: White vinyl with a permeance of 1.3 perms (0.86 metric perm) when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure A, and complying with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.

2.7 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - 1. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
 - 2. Color: White.

2.8 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
 - 1. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
 - 2. Thickness: 11.5 mils (0.29 mm).
 - 3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch (1.0 N/mm) in width.
 - 4. Elongation: 2 percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch (7.2 N/mm) in width.
 - 6. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

- B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
 - 1. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
 - 2. Thickness: 6.5 mils (0.16 mm).
 - 3. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch (1.0 N/mm) in width.
 - 4. Elongation: 2 percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch (7.2 N/mm) in width.
 - 6. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.
- C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
 - 1. Width: 2 inches (50 mm).
 - 2. Thickness: 6 mils (0.15 mm).
 - 3. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch (0.7 N/mm) in width.
 - 4. Elongation: 500 percent.
 - 5. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch (3.3 N/mm) in width.

2.9 SECUREMENTS

- A. Insulation Pins and Hangers:
 - 1. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
 - a. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) thick by 2 inches (50 mm) square.
 - b. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
 - c. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
 - 2. Nonmetal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate fastened to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
 - a. Baseplate: Perforated, nylon sheet, 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) thick by 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter.
 - b. Spindle: Nylon, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated, up to 2-1/2 inches (63 mm).
 - c. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
 - 3. Self-Sticking-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:

- a. Baseplate: Galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) thick by 2 inches (50 mm) square.
 - b. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
 - c. Adhesive-backed base with a peel-off protective cover.
4. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- (0.41-mm-) thick, galvanized-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter.
- a. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.

2.10 CORNER ANGLES

- A. PVC Corner Angles: 30 mils (0.8 mm) thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch (25 by 25 mm), PVC according to ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C. White or color-coded to match adjacent surface.
- B. Aluminum Corner Angles: 0.040 inch (1.0 mm) thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch (25 by 25 mm), aluminum according to ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of ducts and fittings.
- B. Install insulation materials, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of duct system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

- H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
 - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
 - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches (100 mm) o.c.
 - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm). Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at [2 inches (50 mm)] [4 inches (100 mm)] o.c.
 - a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
 - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
 - 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct flanges and fittings.
- L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches (100 mm) beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

3.3 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
 - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.

2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm) below top of roof flashing.
 4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm).
 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- D. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches (50 mm).
1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- E. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
1. Duct: For penetrations through fire-rated assemblies, terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves and externally insulate damper sleeve beyond floor to match adjacent duct insulation. Overlap damper sleeve and duct insulation at least 2 inches (50 mm).
 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.4 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

- A. Blanket Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
 2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
 3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:

- a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches (450 mm) and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches (75 mm) maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches (400 mm) o.c.
 - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches (450 mm), place pins 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. each way, and 3 inches (75 mm) maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
 - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
 - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
 - e. Impale insulation over pins and attach speed washers.
 - f. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
 4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches (50 mm) from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch (13-mm) outward-clinching staples, 1 inch (25 mm) o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
 - a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
 - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F (10 deg C) at 18-foot (5.5-m) intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches (75 mm).
 5. Overlap unfaced blankets a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) on longitudinal seams and end joints. At end joints, secure with steel bands spaced a maximum of 18 inches (450 mm) o.c.
 6. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
 7. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.
- B. Board Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
 2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.

3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
 - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches (450 mm) and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches (75 mm) maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches (400 mm) o.c.
 - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches (450 mm), space pins 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. each way, and 3 inches (75 mm) maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
 - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
 - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
 - e. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches (50 mm) from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch (13-mm) outward-clinching staples, 1 inch (25 mm) o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
 - a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
 - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F (10 deg C) at 18-foot (5.5-m) intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches (75 mm).
5. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Groove and score insulation to fit as closely as possible to outside and inside radius of elbows. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
6. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.

3.5 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

- A. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:
 1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
 2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
 3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.

4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide joint strips at end joints.
 5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.
- B. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch (25-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications, install with longitudinal seams along top and bottom of tanks and vessels. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.
- C. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches (300 mm) o.c. and at end joints.

3.6 FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Where fire-rated insulation system is indicated, secure system to ducts and duct hangers and supports to maintain a continuous fire rating.
- B. Insulate duct access panels and doors to achieve same fire rating as duct.
- C. Install firestopping at penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Fire-stop systems are specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
1. Inspect ductwork, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to [one] <Insert number> location(s) for each duct system defined in the "Duct Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- C. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.8 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Plenums and Ducts Requiring Insulation:
1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
 2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.

3. Indoor, concealed return located in unconditioned space.
4. Indoor, exposed return located in unconditioned space.
5. Indoor, concealed, Type I, commercial, kitchen hood exhaust.
6. Indoor, exposed, Type I, commercial, kitchen hood exhaust.
7. Indoor, concealed oven and warewash exhaust.
8. Indoor, exposed oven and warewash exhaust.
9. Indoor, concealed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
10. Indoor, exposed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.

B. Items Not Insulated:

1. Fibrous-glass ducts.
2. Metal ducts with duct liner of sufficient thickness to comply with energy code and ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
3. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.
4. Factory-insulated plenums and casings.
5. Flexible connectors.
6. Vibration-control devices.
7. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.

3.9 DUCT AND PLENUM BLANKET INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Duct insulation shall be per the following table with minimum thickness number of layers and minimum (R Value) as indicated:

	Conditioned Spaces	Indirectly Conditioned Spaces	Heated, Semi-Heated and Unconditioned	Exterior and Attic Spaces	Buried
Supply	1"	1.5 (R-6)	3" (R-6)	2-2" (R-12)	1.5" (R-3.5)
Return	None	None	3" (R-6)	2-2" (R-12)	1.5" (R-3.5)
Exhaust	None	None	None	None	None
Exhaust on O.A. Side of Dampers	1"	1.5"	1.5"	None	None
Exhaust Upstream of Energy Recovery	None	None	3"	2-2"	1.5"
Outside Air	2"	1.5"	1"	None	None
Moist Air	1.5"	1.5"	2"	3"	1.5"

3.10 DUCT AND PLENUM BOARD INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Duct insulation shall be per the following table with minimum thickness number of layers and minimum (R Value) as indicated:

	Conditioned Spaces	Indirectly Conditioned Spaces	Heated, Semi-Heated and Unconditioned	Exterior and Attic Spaces	Buried
Supply	1"	1.5" (R-6)	1.5" (R-6)	3" (R-12)	N/A
Return	None	None	1.5" (R-6)	3" (R-12)	N/A
Exhaust	None	None	None	None	N/A
Exhaust on O.A. Side of Dampers	1"	1.5"	1.5"	None	N/A
Exhaust Upstream of Energy Recovery	None	None	2"	3"	N/A
Outside Air	2"	1.5"	1"	None	N/A
Moist Air	1"	1.5"	2"	2"	N/A

3.11 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Ducts and Plenums, Concealed:
1. PVC 30 mils (0.8 mm) thick.

END OF SECTION 230713

SECTION 230719

HVAC PIPING INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Conditioned Space: An enclosed space within a building that is both mechanically heated and mechanically cooled.
- B. Heated Space: An enclosed space within a building that is mechanically heated and NOT mechanically cooled.
- C. Indirectly Conditioned Space: An enclosed space within a building that is not mechanically heated or cooled, which is heated or cooled by being connected to adjacent spaces. Select examples: spaces above non insulated ceilings, return air ceiling plenums, unventilated attic with the building envelope insulation at the roof line.
- D. Semi-Heated Space: An enclosed space within a building that is heated and controlled to a temperature maximum of 55 degrees F. Select examples: mechanical rooms, electrical rooms, tunnels.
- E. Unconditioned Space: An enclosed space within a building that is not mechanically cooled or heated and is not indirectly conditioned. Select examples: crawl spaces, storage rooms connecting to the outside, ventilated attics, unventilated attics where the building envelope insulation is located at the ceiling below the attic.
- F. Concealed Ducts/Pipes: Ducts/Pipes not visible within the room they are located, after the project is completed.
- G. Exposed Ducts/Pipes: Ducts/Pipes visible within the room they are located, after the project is completed.
- H. Ceiling Space/Plenum: An enclosed portion of the building structure, other than an occupiable space being conditioned, that is designed to allow air movement, and thereby serve as part of an air distribution system.

1.3 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following HVAC piping systems:
 - 1. Refrigerant suction and hot-gas piping, indoors and outdoors.
- B. Related Sections:

1. Division 23 Section "HVAC Equipment Insulation."
2. Division 23 Section "Duct Insulation."

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied if any).
- B. LEED Submittals:
 1. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants, documentation including printed statement of VOC content.
 2. Laboratory Test Reports for Credit IEQ 4: For adhesives and sealants, documentation indicating that products comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
 2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
 3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
 4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
 5. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties.
 6. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
 7. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Division 23 Section "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.
- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.9 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Underground Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- D. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- E. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

- a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aerocel.
- b. Armacell LLC; AP Armaflex.
- c. K-Flex USA; Insul-Lock, Insul-Tube, and K-FLEX LS.

F. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

- a. Johns Manville; Micro-Lok.
- b. Knauf Insulation; 1000-Degree Pipe Insulation.
- c. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe Insulation or SSL II.

2. Type I, 850 deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, minimum of 3.5 pounds per cubic foot density with factory-applied ASJ-SSL. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

3. Type II, 1200 deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type II, Grade A, minimum 3.5 pounds per cubic foot density with factory-applied ASJ-SSL. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

G. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Semirigid board material with factory-applied ASJ complying with ASTM C 612, Type IB. Nominal density is 2.5 lb/cu. ft. or more. Thermal conductivity (k-value) at 100 deg F is 0.29 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F or less. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

- a. Johns Manville; MicroFlex.
- b. Knauf Insulation; Pipe and Tank Insulation.
- c. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe and Tank Insulation.

2.2 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Calcium Silicate Adhesive: Fibrous, sodium-silicate-based adhesive with a service temperature range of 50 to 800 deg F.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

- a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-97.
- b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 290.
- c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 81-27.
- d. Johns Manville Calbound Gold Hi-Temp Glue Adhesives.

- e. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-30.
 - f. Vimasco Corporation; 760.
- 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. Phenolic and Polyisocyanurate Adhesive: Solvent-based resin adhesive, with a service temperature range of minus 75 to plus 300 deg F.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-96.
 - b. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 81-33.
 - 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- D. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aero seal.
 - b. Armacell LLC; Armaflex 520 Adhesive.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-75.
 - d. K-Flex USA; R-373 Contact Adhesive.
 - 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 500 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- E. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-127.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.

- c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-60/85-70.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
 - 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- F. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK and PVDC Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-82.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-50.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
 - 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- G. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.
- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Dow Corning Corporation; 739, Dow Silicone.
 - b. Johns Manville; Zeston Perma-Weld, CEEL-TITE Solvent Welding Adhesive.
 - c. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; Welding Adhesive.
 - d. Speedline Corporation; Polyco VP Adhesive.
 - 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.3 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.

1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc.; CP-30.
 - b. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-80/30-90.
 - c. Vimasco Corporation; 749.
 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
 4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
 5. Color: White.

2.4 SEALANTS

- A. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 95-44.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
 2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
 5. Color: Aluminum.
 6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- B. ASJ Flashing Sealants and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
 - b. Eagle Bridges-Marathon Industries; 405.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc.; 30-45, 95-44.

2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
5. Color: White.
6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.5 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
 2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.

2.6 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Johns Manville; Zeston 300 Series.
 - b. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; FG Series.
 - c. Proto Corporation; LoSmoke.
 - d. Speedline Corporation; SmokeSafe.
 2. Flame Spread: 25
 3. Smoke Developed: 50
 4. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
 5. Color: Color-code jackets based on system
 6. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
 - a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.
- C. Metal Jacket:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Metal Jacketing Systems.
 - b. ITW Insulation Systems; Aluminum and Stainless Steel Jacketing.
 - c. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate.
2. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
 - a. Factory cut and rolled to required size.
 - b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
 - d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
 - e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
 - 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
 - 2) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
 - 3) Tee covers.
 - 4) Flange and union covers.
 - 5) End caps.
 - 6) Beveled collars.
 - 7) Valve covers.
 - 8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.

2.7 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 428 AWF ASJ.
 - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0836.
 - c. Compac Corporation; 104 and 105.
 - d. Venture Tape; 1540 CW Plus, 1542 CW Plus, and 1542 CW Plus/SQ.
 2. Width: 3 inches.
 3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
 4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 5. Elongation: 2 percent.
 6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

- B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 491 AWF FSK.
 - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0827.
 - c. Compac Corporation; 110 and 111.
 - d. Venture Tape; 1525 CW NT, 1528 CW, and 1528 CW/SQ.
 2. Width: 3 inches.
 3. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
 4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
 5. Elongation: 2 percent.
 6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
 7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.
- C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 370 White PVC tape.
 - b. Compac Corporation; 130.
 - c. Venture Tape; 1506 CW NS.
 2. Width: 2 inches.
 3. Thickness: 6 mils.
 4. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.
 5. Elongation: 500 percent.
 6. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.
- D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 488 AWF.
 - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0800.
 - c. Compac Corporation; 120.
 - d. Venture Tape; 3520 CW.
 2. Width: 2 inches.
 3. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
 4. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
 5. Elongation: 5 percent.
 6. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.
- E. PVDC Tape for Indoor Applications: White vapor-retarder PVDC tape with acrylic adhesive.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Dow Chemical Company (The); Saran 540 Vapor Retarder Tape.
 2. Width: 3 inches.
 3. Film Thickness: 4 mils.
 4. Adhesive Thickness: 1.5 mils.
 5. Elongation at Break: 145 percent.
 6. Tensile Strength: 55 lbf/inch in width.
- F. PVDC Tape for Outdoor Applications: White vapor-retarder PVDC tape with acrylic adhesive.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Dow Chemical Company (The); Saran 560 Vapor Retarder Tape.
 2. Width: 3 inches.
 3. Film Thickness: 6 mils.
 4. Adhesive Thickness: 1.5 mils.
 5. Elongation at Break: 145 percent.
 6. Tensile Strength: 55 lbf/inch in width.

2.8 SECUREMENTS

- A. Bands:
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. ITW Insulation Systems; Gerrard Strapping and Seals.
 - b. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate Strapping, Seals, and Springs.
 2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch thick, 3/4 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
 3. Aluminum: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 3/4 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
 4. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.
- B. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- wide, stainless steel or Monel.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.

3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.

- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
 - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
 - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
 - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 4 inches o.c.
 - a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
 - b. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic per manufacturer's recommendations.
 - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
 - 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
 - 1. Vibration-control devices.
 - 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
 - 3. Nameplates and data plates.
 - 4. Manholes.
 - 5. Handholes.
 - 6. Cleanouts.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
 - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.

2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
 4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
1. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly

- against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
 4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
 5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
 6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
 7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
 8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
 9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.
- D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
 2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe

- insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
 4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
 5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF CALCIUM SILICATE INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure single-layer insulation with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch intervals and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Install two-layer insulation with joints tightly butted and staggered at least 3 inches. Secure inner layer with wire spaced at 12-inch intervals. Secure outer layer with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch intervals.
3. Apply a skim coat of mineral-fiber, hydraulic-setting cement to insulation surface. When cement is dry, apply flood coat of lagging adhesive and press on one layer of glass cloth or tape. Overlap edges at least 1 inch. Apply finish coat of lagging adhesive over glass cloth or tape. Thin finish coat to achieve smooth, uniform finish.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of block insulation of same material and thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Finish flange insulation same as pipe insulation.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. When preformed insulation sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of calcium silicate insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.
3. Finish fittings insulation same as pipe insulation.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

- A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
 - 1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
 - 2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
 - 3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
 - 4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
 - 1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
 - 2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
 - 1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
 - 2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
 - 3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
 - 4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.8 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

- A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
 - 1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
 - 2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
 - 3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
 - 4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.9 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

A. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.

1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.

B. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

3.10 FINISHES

A. Pipe Insulation with ASJ or Other Paintable Jacket Material for Exposed Piping in Finished Spaces: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Division 09 painting Sections.

1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
 - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.

- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

3.12 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
 - 1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
 - 2. Underground piping.
 - 3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.
- C. Service Drains and Vents: Insulation and jacketing to be the same as for the piping system served.

3.13 CONDITIONED SPACE, HEATED, SEMI-HEATED, INDIRECTLY CONDITIONED AND BURIED PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I, Minimum Resistance: $R=3.7/\text{in.}$:

Service	Temp. Deg. F	1" and Less	1" to 1.25"	1.5" to 3"	4" to 6"	8" and Larger
Refrigerant, Chilled Water	<60	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.5
Condensate Water	60-105	0	0	0	0	0

3.14 OUTDOOR, ABOVEGROUND, UNCONDITIONED SPACE PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I, Minimum Resistance: $R=3.7/\text{in.}$:

Service	Temp. Deg. F	1" and Less	1" to 1.25"	1.5" to 3"	4" to 6"	8" and Larger
Refrigerant, Chilled Water	<60	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.5

3.15 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Piping, Concealed:
 - 1. None.
- D. Piping, Exposed:
 - 1. In General Finished Areas: PVC, White, 20 mils thick.

3.16 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Piping, Concealed:
 - 1. Aluminum, Stucco Embossed: [0.016 inch thick.
- D. Piping, Exposed:
 - 1. Aluminum, Stucco Embossed: 0.032 inch thick.

END OF SECTION 230719

SECTION 230923

DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL (DDC) SYSTEM FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. DDC system for monitoring and controlling of HVAC systems.
2. Delivery of selected control devices to equipment and systems manufacturers for factory installation and to HVAC systems installers for field installation.
3. Raceways:
 - a. Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for raceways for low-voltage control cable.
 - b. Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems" for raceways for balanced twisted pair cabling and optical fiber cable.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Algorithm: A logical procedure for solving a recurrent mathematical problem. A prescribed set of well-defined rules or processes for solving a problem in a finite number of steps.
- B. Analog: A continuously varying signal value, such as current, flow, pressure, or temperature.
- C. BACnet Specific Definitions:
 1. BACnet: Building Automation Control Network Protocol, ASHRAE 135. A communications protocol allowing devices to communicate data over and services over a network.
 2. BACnet Interoperability Building Blocks (BIBBs): BIBB defines a small portion of BACnet functionality that is needed to perform a particular task. BIBBs are combined to build the BACnet functional requirements for a device.
 3. BACnet/IP: Defines and allows using a reserved UDP socket to transmit BACnet messages over IP networks. A BACnet/IP network is a collection of one or more IP subnetworks that share the same BACnet network number.
 4. BACnet Testing Laboratories (BTL): Organization responsible for testing products for compliance with ASHRAE 135, operated under direction of BACnet International.
 5. PICS (Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement): Written document that identifies the particular options specified by BACnet that are implemented in a device.
- D. Binary: Two-state signal where a high signal level represents ON" or "OPEN" condition and a low signal level represents "OFF" or "CLOSED" condition. "Digital" is sometimes used interchangeably with "Binary" to indicate a two-state signal.

- E. Controller: Generic term for any standalone, microprocessor-based, digital controller residing on a network, used for local or global control. Three types of controllers are indicated: Network Controller, Programmable Application Controller, and Application-Specific Controller.
- F. Control System Integrator: An entity that assists in expansion of existing enterprise system and support of additional operator interfaces to I/O being added to existing enterprise system.
- G. COV: Changes of value.
- H. DDC System Provider: Authorized representative of, and trained by, DDC system manufacturer and responsible for execution of DDC system Work indicated.
- I. Distributed Control: Processing of system data is decentralized and control decisions are made at subsystem level. System operational programs and information are provided to remote subsystems and status is reported back. On loss of communication, subsystems shall be capable of operating in a standalone mode using the last best available data.
- J. DOCSIS: Data-Over Cable Service Interface Specifications.
- K. Gateway: Bidirectional protocol translator that connects control systems that use different communication protocols.
- L. HLC: Heavy load conditions.
- M. I/O: System through which information is received and transmitted. I/O refers to analog input (AI), binary input (BI), analog output (AO) and binary output (BO). Analog signals are continuous and represent control influences such as flow, level, moisture, pressure, and temperature. Binary signals convert electronic signals to digital pulses (values) and generally represent two-position operating and alarm status. "Digital," (DI and (DO), is sometimes used interchangeably with "Binary," (BI) and (BO), respectively.
- N. LAN: Local area network.
- O. LNS: LonWorks Network Services.
- P. LON Specific Definitions:
 - 1. FTT-10: Echelon Transmitter-Free Topology Transceiver.
 - 2. LonMark: Association comprising suppliers and installers of LonTalk products. Association provides guidelines for implementing LonTalk protocol to ensure interoperability through a standard or consistent implementation.
 - 3. LonTalk: An open standard protocol developed by the Echelon Corporation that uses a "Neuron Chip" for communication. LonTalk is a register trademark of Echelon.
 - 4. LonWorks: Network technology developed by Echelon.
 - 5. Node: Device that communicates using CEA-709.1-C protocol and that is connected to a CEA-709.1-C network.
 - 6. Node Address: The logical address of a node on the network, consisting of a Domain number, Subnet number, and Node number. "Node number" portion of an address is a

- number assigned to device during installation, is unique within a subnet, and is not a factory-set unique Node ID.
7. Node ID: A unique 48-bit identifier assigned at factory to each CEA-709.1-C device. Sometimes called a "Neuron ID."
 8. Program ID: An identifier (number) stored in a device (usually EEPROM) that identifies node manufacturer, functionality of device (application and sequence), transceiver used, and intended device usage.
 9. Standard Configuration Property Type (SCPT): Pronounced "skip-it." A standard format type maintained by LonMark International for configuration properties.
 10. Standard Network Variable Type (SNVT): Pronounced "snivet." A standard format type maintained by LonMark used to define data information transmitted and received by individual nodes. "SNVT" is used in two ways. It is an acronym for "Standard Network Variable Type" and is often used to indicate a network variable itself (i.e., it can mean "a network variable of a standard network variable type").
 11. Subnet: Consists of a logical grouping of up to 127 nodes, where logical grouping is defined by node addressing. Each subnet is assigned a number, which is unique within a Domain. See "Node Address."
 12. TP/FT-10: Free Topology Twisted Pair network defined by CEA-709.3 and is most common media type for a CEA-709.1-C control network.
 13. TP/XF-1250: High-speed, 1.25-Mbps, twisted-pair, doubly terminated bus network defined by "LonMark Interoperability Guidelines" typically used only to connect multiple TP/FT-10 networks.
 14. User-Defined Configuration Property Type (UCPT): Pronounced "U-Keep-It." A Configuration Property format type that is defined by device manufacturer.
 15. User-Defined Network Variable Type (UNVT): Network variable format defined by device manufacturer. UNVTs create non-standard communications that other vendors' devices may not correctly interpret and may negatively impact system operation. UNVTs are not allowed.
- Q. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.
- R. Mobile Device: A data-enabled phone or tablet computer capable of connecting to a cellular data network and running a native control application or accessing a web interface.
- S. Modbus TCP/IP: An open protocol for exchange of process data.
- T. MS/TP: Master-slave/token-passing, IEE 8802-3. Datalink protocol LAN option that uses twisted-pair wire for low-speed communication.
- U. Network Controller: Digital controller, which supports a family of programmable application controllers and application-specific controllers, that communicates on peer-to-peer network for transmission of global data.
- V. Network Repeater: Device that receives data packet from one network and rebroadcasts it to another network. No routing information is added to protocol.
- W. Peer to Peer: Networking architecture that treats all network stations as equal partners.

- X. POT: Portable operator's terminal.
- Y. RAM: Random access memory.
- Z. RF: Radio frequency.
- AA. Router: Device connecting two or more networks at network layer.
- BB. TCP/IP: Transport control protocol/Internet protocol..
- CC. UPS: Uninterruptible power supply.
- DD. USB: Universal Serial Bus.
- EE. User Datagram Protocol (UDP): This protocol assumes that the IP is used as the underlying protocol.
- FF. VAV: Variable air volume.
- GG. WLED: White light emitting diode.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at **[Project site]** <Insert location>.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product include the following:
 - 1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
 - 2. Operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories indicating process operating range, accuracy over range, control signal over range, default control signal with loss of power, calibration data specific to each unique application, electrical power requirements, and limitations of ambient operating environment, including temperature and humidity.
 - 3. Product description with complete technical data, performance curves, and product specification sheets.
 - 4. Installation, operation and maintenance instructions including factors effecting performance.
 - 5. Bill of materials of indicating quantity, manufacturer, and extended model number for each unique product.
 - a. Gateways.
 - b. Routers.
 - c. Protocol analyzers.
 - d. DDC controllers.
 - e. Enclosures.
 - f. Electrical power devices.
 - g. UPS units.

- h. Accessories.
 - i. Instruments.
 - j. Control dampers and actuators.
- 6. When manufacturer's product datasheets apply to a product series rather than a specific product model, clearly indicate and highlight only applicable information.
 - 7. Each submitted piece of product literature shall clearly cross reference specification and drawings that submittal is to cover.

B. Shop Drawings:

- 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details where applicable.
- 2. Include details of product assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
- 3. Detail means of vibration isolation and show attachments to rotating equipment.
- 4. Plan Drawings indicating the following:
 - a. Screened backgrounds of walls, structural grid lines, HVAC equipment, ductwork and piping.
 - b. Room names and numbers with coordinated placement to avoid interference with control products indicated.
 - c. Exact placement of products in rooms, ducts, and piping to reflect proposed installed condition.
 - d. Network communication cable and raceway routing.
 - e. Proposed routing of wiring, cabling, conduit, and tubing, coordinated with building services for review before installation.
- 5. Schematic drawings for each controlled HVAC system indicating the following:
 - a. I/O points labeled with point names shown. Indicate instrument range, normal operating set points, and alarm set points. Indicate fail position of each damper and valve, if included in Project.
 - b. I/O listed in table format showing point name, type of device, manufacturer, model number, and cross-reference to product data sheet number.
 - c. Wiring diagram with each I/O point having a unique identification and indicating labels for all wiring terminals.
 - d. Unique identification of each I/O that shall be consistently used between different drawings showing same point.
 - e. Elementary wiring diagrams of controls for HVAC equipment motor circuits including interlocks, switches, relays and interface to DDC controllers.
 - f. Narrative sequence of operation.
 - g. Graphic sequence of operation, showing all inputs and output logical blocks.
- 6. DDC system network riser diagram indicating the following:
 - a. Each device connected to network with unique identification for each.
 - b. Interconnection of each different network in DDC system.

- c. For each network, indicate communication protocol, speed and physical means of interconnecting network devices, such as copper cable type, or optical fiber cable type. Indicate raceway type and size for each.
 - d. Each network port for connection of an operator workstation or other type of operator interface with unique identification for each.
- 7. DDC system electrical power riser diagram indicating the following:
 - a. Each point of connection to field power with requirements (volts/phase//hertz/amperes/connection type) listed for each.
 - b. Each control power supply including, as applicable, transformers, power-line conditioners, transient voltage suppression and high filter noise units, DC power supplies, and UPS units with unique identification for each.
 - c. Each product requiring power with requirements (volts/phase//hertz/amperes/connection type) listed for each.
 - d. Power wiring type and size, race type, and size for each.
- 8. Monitoring and control signal diagrams indicating the following:
 - a. Control signal cable and wiring between controllers and I/O.
 - b. Point-to-point schematic wiring diagrams for each product.
 - c. Control signal tubing to sensors, switches and transmitters.
 - d. Process signal tubing to sensors, switches and transmitters.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For DDC system to include in emergency, operation and maintenance manuals.
 - 1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - a. Project Record Drawings of as-built versions of submittal Shop Drawings provided in electronic PDF format.
 - b. Testing and commissioning reports and checklists of completed final versions of reports, checklists, and trend logs.
 - c. As-built versions of submittal Product Data.
 - d. Names, addresses, e-mail addresses and 24-hour telephone numbers of Installer and service representatives for DDC system and products.
 - e. Operator's manual with procedures for operating control systems including logging on and off, handling alarms, producing point reports, trending data, overriding computer control and changing set points and variables.
 - f. Programming manuals with description of programming language and syntax, of statements for algorithms and calculations used, of point database creation and modification, of program creation and modification, and of editor use.
 - g. Engineering, installation, and maintenance manuals that explain how to:
 - 1) Design and install new points, panels, and other hardware.
 - 2) Perform preventive maintenance and calibration.

- 3) Debug hardware problems.
- 4) Repair or replace hardware.

- h. Documentation of all programs created using custom programming language including set points, tuning parameters, and object database.
- i. List of recommended spare parts with part numbers and suppliers.
- j. Complete original-issue documentation, installation, and maintenance information for furnished third-party hardware including computer equipment and sensors.
- k. Complete original-issue copies of furnished software, including operating systems, custom programming language, operator workstation software, and graphics software.
- l. Licenses, guarantees, and warranty documents.
- m. Recommended preventive maintenance procedures for system components, including schedule of tasks such as inspection, cleaning, and calibration; time between tasks; and task descriptions.
- n. Owner training materials.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace products that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 1. Failures shall be adjusted, repaired, or replaced at no additional cost or reduction in service to Owner.
 2. Include updates or upgrades to software and firmware if necessary to resolve deficiencies.
 - a. Install updates only after receiving Owner's written authorization.
 3. Warranty service shall occur during normal business hours and commence within **16** hours of Owner's warranty service request.
 4. Warranty Period: **Two** year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 DDC SYSTEM MANUFACTURERS

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)

2.2 DDC SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Microprocessor-based monitoring and control including analog/digital conversion and program logic. A control loop or subsystem in which digital and analog information is received and processed by a microprocessor, and digital control signals are generated based on control algorithms and transmitted to field devices to achieve a set of predefined conditions.
 1. DDC system shall consist of a high-speed, peer-to-peer network of distributed DDC controllers other network devices, operator interfaces, and software.

- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.3 WEB ACCESS

1. Web-Based Access to DDC System:

- a. DDC system software shall be based on server thin-client architecture, designed around open standards of web technology. DDC system server shall be accessed using a web browser over DDC system network, using Owner's LAN, and remotely over Internet through Owner's LAN.
- b. Intent of thin-client architecture is to provide operators complete access to DDC system via a web browser. No special software other than a web browser shall be required to access graphics, point displays, and trends; to configure trends, points, and controllers; and to edit programming.
- c. web access shall be password protected.

B. Electric Power Quality:

C. UPS:

- 1. DDC system products powered by UPS units shall include the following:
 - a. Servers.
 - b. Gateways.
 - c. DDC controllers.

D. Continuity of Operation after Electric Power Interruption:

- 1. Equipment and associated factory-installed controls, field-installed controls, electrical equipment, and power supply connected to building normal and backup power systems shall automatically return equipment and associated controls to operating state occurring immediately before loss of normal power, without need for manual intervention by operator when power is restored either through backup power source or through normal power if restored before backup power is brought online.

2.4 DDC SYSTEM OPERATOR INTERFACES

A. Operator Means of System Access: Operator shall be able to access entire DDC system through any of multiple means, including, but not limited to, the following:

- 1. Remote connection through web access.

B. Access to system, regardless of operator means used, shall be transparent to operator.

C. Critical Alarm Reporting:

- 1. Operator-selected critical alarms shall be sent by DDC system to notify operator of critical alarms that require immediate attention.
- 2. DDC system shall send alarm notification to multiple recipients that are assigned for each alarm.

3. DDC system shall notify recipients by any or all means, including e-mail, text message, and prerecorded phone message to mobile and landline phone numbers.

2.5 NETWORKS

- A. Acceptable networks for connecting workstations, mobile devices, and network controllers include the following:
 1. IP.
 2. IEEE 8802-3, Ethernet.
- B. Acceptable networks for connecting programmable application controllers include the following:
 1. IP.
 2. IEEE 8802-3, Ethernet.
- C. Acceptable networks for connecting application-specific controllers include the following:
 1. IP.
 2. IEEE 8802-3, Ethernet.

2.6 NETWORK COMMUNICATION PROTOCOL

- A. Network communication protocol(s) used throughout entire DDC system shall be open to Owner and available to other companies for use in making future modifications to DDC system.
- B. ASHRAE 135 Protocol:
 1. ASHRAE 135 communication protocol shall be sole and native protocol used throughout entire DDC system.
 2. DDC system shall not require use of gateways except to integrate HVAC equipment and other building systems and equipment, not required to use ASHRAE 135 communication protocol.
 3. If used, gateways shall connect to DDC system using ASHRAE 135 communication protocol and Project object properties and read/write services indicated by interoperability schedule.
 4. Operator workstations, controllers and other network devices shall be tested and listed by BACnet Testing Laboratories.
- C. Industry Standard Protocols:
 1. DDC system shall use any one or a combination of the following industry standard protocols for network communication while complying with other DDC system requirements indicated:
 - a. ASHRAE 135.
 - b. CEA-709.1-C.
 - c. Modbus Application Protocol Specification V1.1b.
 2. Portions of DDC system networks using ASHRAE 135 communication protocol shall be an open implementation of network devices complying with ASHRAE 135. Network devices shall be tested and listed by BACnet Testing Laboratories.

D. Alarm Handling Software:

1. Include alarm handling software to report all alarm conditions monitored and transmitted through DDC controllers, gateways and other network devices.
2. Include first in, first out handling of alarms according to alarm priority ranking, with most critical alarms first, and with buffer storage in case of simultaneous and multiple alarms.
3. Alarm handling shall be active at all times to ensure that alarms are processed even if an operator is not currently signed on to DDC system.
4. Alarms display shall include the following:
 - a. Indication of alarm condition such as "Abnormal Off," "Hi Alarm," and "Low Alarm."
 - b. "Analog Value" or "Status" group and point identification with native language point descriptor such as "Space Temperature, Building 110, 2nd Floor, Room 212."
 - c. Discrete per point alarm action message, such as "Call Maintenance Dept. Ext-5561."
 - d. Include extended message capability to allow assignment and printing of extended action messages. Capability shall be operator programmable and assignable on a per point basis.
5. Alarms shall be directed to appropriate operator workstations, printers, and individual operators by privilege level and segregation assignments.
6. Send e-mail alarm messages to designated operators.
7. Send e-mail, page, text and voice messages to designated operators for critical alarms.
8. Alarms shall be categorized and processed by class.
 - a. Class 1:
 - 1) Associated with fire, security and other extremely critical equipment monitoring functions; have alarm, trouble, return to normal, and acknowledge conditions printed and displayed.
 - 2) Unacknowledged alarms to be placed in unacknowledged alarm buffer.
 - 3) All conditions shall cause an audible sound and shall require individual acknowledgment to silence audible sound.
 - b. Class 2:
 - 1) Critical, but not life-safety related, and processed same as Class 1 alarms, except do not require individual acknowledgment.
 - 2) Acknowledgement may be through a multiple alarm acknowledgment.
 - c. Class 3:
 - 1) General alarms; printed, displayed and placed in unacknowledged alarm buffer queues.
 - 2) Each new alarm received shall cause an audible sound. Audible sound shall be silenced by "acknowledging" alarm or by pressing a "silence" key.
 - 3) Acknowledgement of queued alarms shall be either on an individual basis or through a multiple alarm acknowledgement.

- 4) Alarms returning to normal condition shall be printed and not cause an audible sound or require acknowledgment.
 - d. Class 4:
 - 1) Routine maintenance or other types of warning alarms.
 - 2) Alarms to be printed only, with no display, no audible sound and no acknowledgment required.
 9. Include an unacknowledged alarm indicator on display to alert operator that there are unacknowledged alarms in system. Operator shall be able to acknowledge alarms on an individual basis or through a multiple alarm acknowledge key, depending on alarm class.
 10. To ensure that no alarm records are lost, it shall be possible to assign a backup printer to accept alarms in case of failure of primary printer.
- E. Reports and Logs:
 1. Include reporting software package that allows operator to select, modify, or create reports using DDC system I/O point data available.
 2. Each report shall be definable as to data content, format, interval and date.
 3. Report data shall be sampled and stored on DDC controller, within storage limits of DDC controller, and then uploaded to archive on **[workstation]** **[server]** for historical reporting.
 4. Operator shall be able to obtain real-time logs of all I/O points by type or status, such as alarm, point lockout, or normal.
 5. Reports and logs shall be stored on **[workstation]** **[and]** **[server]** hard drives in a format that is readily accessible by other standard software applications, including spreadsheets and word processing.
 6. Reports and logs shall be readily printed and set to be printed either on operator command or at a specific time each day.
- F. Standard Reports: Standard DDC system reports shall be provided and operator shall be able to customize reports later.
 1. All I/O: With current status and values.
 2. Alarm: All current alarms, except those in alarm lockout.
 3. Disabled I/O: All I/O points that are disabled.
 4. Alarm Lockout I/O: All I/O points in alarm lockout, whether manual or automatic.
 5. Alarm Lockout I/O in Alarm: All I/O in alarm lockout that are currently in alarm.
 6. Logs:
 - a. Alarm history.
 - b. System messages.
 - c. System events.
 - d. Trends.
- G. Custom Reports: Operator shall be able to easily define any system data into a daily, weekly, monthly, or annual report. Reports shall be time and date stamped and shall contain a report title.

H. Standard Trends:

1. Trend all I/O point present values, set points, and other parameters indicated for trending.
2. Trends shall be associated into groups, and a trend report shall be set up for each group.
3. Trends shall be stored within DDC controller and uploaded to hard drives automatically on reaching **75** of DDC controller buffer limit, or by operator request, or by archiving time schedule.
4. Preset trend intervals for each I/O point after review with Owner.
5. Trend intervals shall be operator selectable from 10 seconds up to 60 minutes. Minimum number of consecutive trend values stored at one time shall be 100 per variable.
6. When drive storage memory is full, most recent data shall overwrite oldest data.
7. Archived and real-time trend data shall be available for viewing numerically and graphically by operators.

I. Custom Trends: Operator shall be able to define a custom trend log for any I/O point in DDC system.

1. Each trend shall include interval, start time, and stop time.
2. Data shall be sampled and stored on DDC controller, within storage limits of DDC controller, and then uploaded to archive on the cloud.
3. Data shall be retrievable for use in spreadsheets and standard database programs.

J. Programming Software:

1. Include programming software to execute sequences of operation indicated.
2. Include programming routines in simple and easy to follow logic with detailed text comments describing what the logic does and how it corresponds to sequence of operation.
3. Programming software shall be one of the following:
 - a. Graphic Based: Programming shall use a library of function blocks made from preprogrammed code designed for DDC control systems.
 - 1) Function blocks shall be assembled with interconnection lines that represent to control sequence in a flowchart.
 - 2) Programming tools shall be viewable in real time to show present values and logical results of each function block.
 - b. Menu Based: Programming shall be done by entering parameters, definitions, conditions, requirements and constraints.
 - c. Line by Line and Text Based: Programming shall declare variable types such as local, global, real, integer, and so on, at the beginning of the program. Use descriptive comments frequently to describe programming code.
4. Include means for detecting programming errors and testing software control strategies with a simulation tool before implementing in actual control. Simulation tool may be inherent with programming software or as a separate product.

K. Database Management Software:

1. Where a separate SQL database is used for information storage, DDC system shall include database management software that separates database monitoring and managing functions by supporting multiple separate windows.
2. Database secure access shall be accomplished using standard SQL authentication including ability to access data for use outside of DDC system applications.
3. Database management function shall include summarized information on trend, alarm, event, and audit for the following database management actions:
 - a. Backup.
 - b. Purge.
 - c. Restore.
4. Database management software shall support the following:
 - a. Statistics: Display database server information and trend, alarm, event, and audit information on database.
 - b. Maintenance: Include method of purging records from trend, alarm, event and audit databases by supporting separate screens for creating a backup before purging, selecting database, and allowing for retention of a selected number of day's data.
 - c. Backup: Include means to create a database backup file and select a storage location.
 - d. Restore: Include a restricted means of restoring a database by requiring operator to have proper security level.
5. Database management software shall include information of current database activity, including the following:
 - a. Ready.
 - b. Purging record from a database.
 - c. Action failed.
 - d. Refreshing statistics.
 - e. Restoring database.
 - f. Shrinking a database.
 - g. Backing up a database.
 - h. Resetting Internet information services.
 - i. Starting network device manager.
 - j. Shutting down the network device manager.
 - k. Action successful.
6. Database management software monitoring functions shall continuously read database information once operator has logged on.
7. Include operator notification through on-screen pop-up display and e-mail message when database value has exceeded a warning or alarm limit.
8. Monitoring settings window shall have the following sections:
 - a. Allow operator to set and review scan intervals and start times.

- b. E-mail: Allow operator to create and review e-mail and phone text messages to be delivered when a warning or an alarm is generated.
 - c. Warning: Allow operator to define warning limit parameters, set reminder frequency and link e-mail message.
 - d. Alarm: Allow operator to define alarm limit parameters, set reminder frequency and link e-mail message.
 - e. Database Login: Protect system from unauthorized database manipulation by creating a read access and a write access for each of trend, alarm, event and audit databases as well as operator proper security access to restore a database.
9. Monitoring settings taskbar shall include the following informational icons:
- a. Normal: Indicates by color and size, or other easily identifiable means that all databases are within their limits.
 - b. Warning: Indicates by color and size, or other easily identifiable means that one or more databases have exceeded their warning limit.
 - c. Alarm: Indicates by color and size, or other easily identifiable means that one or more databases have exceeded their alarm limit.

2.7 ASHRAE 135 GATEWAYS

- A. Include BACnet communication ports, whenever available as an equipment OEM standard option, for integration via a single communication cable. BACnet-controlled plant equipment includes, but is not limited to, boilers, chillers, <Insert equipment,> and variable-speed drives.
- B. Include gateways to connect BACnet to legacy systems, existing non-BACnet devices, and existing non-BACnet DDC-controlled equipment, only when specifically requested and approved by Owner.
- C. Include with each gateway an interoperability schedule showing each point or event on legacy side that BACnet "client" will read, and each parameter that BACnet network will write to. Describe this interoperability of BACnet services, or BIBBs, defined in ASHRAE 135, Annex K.
- D. Gateway Minimum Requirements:
 - 1. Read and view all readable object properties on non-BACnet network to BACnet network and vice versa where applicable.
 - 2. Write to all writeable object properties on non-BACnet network from BACnet network and vice versa where applicable.
 - 3. Include single-pass (only one protocol to BACnet without intermediary protocols) translation from non-BACnet protocol to BACnet and vice versa.
 - 4. Comply with requirements of Data Sharing Read Property, Data Sharing Write Property, Device Management Dynamic Device Binding-B, and Device Management Communication Control BIBBs according to ASHRAE 135.
 - 5. Hardware, software, software licenses, and configuration tools for operator-to-gateway communications.
 - 6. Backup programming and parameters on CD media and the ability to modify, download, backup, and restore gateway configuration.

2.8 DDC CONTROLLERS

- A. DDC system shall consist of a combination of network controllers, programmable application controllers and application-specific controllers to satisfy performance requirements indicated.
- B. DDC controllers shall perform monitoring, control, energy optimization and other requirements indicated.
- C. DDC controllers shall use a multitasking, multiuser, real-time digital control microprocessor with a distributed network database and intelligence.
- D. Each DDC controller shall be capable of full and complete operation as a completely independent unit and as a part of a DDC system wide distributed network.
- E. Environment Requirements:
 - 1. Controller hardware shall be suitable for the anticipated ambient conditions.
 - 2. Controllers located in conditioned space shall be rated for operation at [32 to 120 deg F (Zero to 50 deg C)] <Insert temperature range>.
 - 3. Controllers located outdoors shall be rated for operation at [40 to 150 deg F (40 to 65 deg C)] <Insert temperature range>.
- F. Power and Noise Immunity:
 - 1. Controller shall operate at 90 to 110 percent of nominal voltage rating and shall perform an orderly shutdown below 80 percent of nominal voltage.
 - 2. Operation shall be protected against electrical noise of 5 to 120 Hz and from keyed radios with up to 5 W of power located within 36 inches (900 mm) of enclosure.
- G. DDC Controller Spare Processing Capacity:
 - 1. Include spare processing memory for each controller. RAM, PROM, or EEPROM will implement requirements indicated with the following spare memory:
 - a. Network Controllers: [50] [60] [70] <Insert value> percent.
 - b. Programmable Application Controllers: Not less than [60] [70] [80] <Insert number> percent.
 - c. Application-Specific Controllers: Not less than [70] [80] [90] <Insert number> percent.
 - 2. Memory shall support DDC controller's operating system and database and shall include the following:
 - a. Monitoring and control.
 - b. Energy management, operation and optimization applications.
 - c. Alarm management.
 - d. Historical trend data of all connected I/O points.
 - e. Maintenance applications.
 - f. Operator interfaces.

- g. Monitoring of manual overrides.
- H. DDC Controller Spare I/O Point Capacity: Include spare I/O point capacity for each controller as follows:
 - 1. Network Controllers:
 - a. [10] [20] <Insert number> percent of each AI, AO, BI, and BO point connected to controller.
 - b. Minimum Spare I/O Points per Controller:
 - 1) AIs: [Two] [Three] <Insert number>.
 - 2) AOs: [Two] [Three] <Insert number>.
 - 3) BIs: [Three] [Five] <Insert number>.
 - 4) BOs: [Three] [Five] <Insert number>.
 - 2. Programmable Application Controllers:
 - a. [10] [20] <Insert number> percent of each AI, AO, BI, and BO point connected to controller.
 - b. Minimum Spare I/O Points per Controller:
 - 1) AIs: [Two] [Three] <Insert number>.
 - 2) AOs: [Two] [Three] <Insert number>.
 - 3) BIs: [Three] [Five] <Insert number>.
 - 4) BOs: [Three] [Five] <Insert number>.
 - 3. Application-Specific Controllers:
 - a. [10] <Insert number> percent of each AI, AO, BI, and BO point connected to controller.
 - b. Minimum Spare I/O Points per Controller:
 - 1) AIs: [One] [Two] <Insert number>.
 - 2) AOs: [One] [Two] <Insert number>.
 - 3) BIs: [One] [Two] <Insert number>.
 - 4) BOs: [One] [Two] <Insert number>.
- I. Maintenance and Support: Include the following features to facilitate maintenance and support:
 - 1. Mount microprocessor components on circuit cards for ease of removal and replacement.
 - 2. Means to quickly and easily disconnect controller from network.
 - 3. Means to quickly and easily access connect to field test equipment.
 - 4. Visual indication that controller electric power is on, of communication fault or trouble, and that controller is receiving and sending signals to network.
- J. General Requirements for CEA-709.1-C DDC Controllers:

1. Controllers shall be LonMark certified.
2. Distinguishable and accessible switch, button, or pin, when pressed shall broadcast its 48-bit Node ID and Program ID over network.
3. TP/FT-10 transceiver according to CEA-709.3 and connections for TP/FT-10 control network wiring.
4. TP/XF-1250 transceiver according to CEA-709.3 and connections for TP/XF-1250 control network wiring.
5. Communicate using CEA-709.1-C protocol.
6. Controllers configured into subnets, as required, to comply with performance requirements indicated.
7. Network communication through LNS network management and database standard for CEA-709.1-C network devices.
8. Locally powered, not powered through network connection.
9. Functionality required to support applications indicated, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Input and outputs indicated and as required to support sequence of operation and application in which it is used. SNVTs shall have meaningful names identifying the value represented by an SNVT. Unless an SNVT of an appropriate engineering type is unavailable, all network variables shall be of an SNVT with engineering units appropriate to value the variable represents.
 - b. Configurable through SCPTs defined in LonMark SCPT List, operator-defined UCPTs, network configuration inputs (NCIs) of an SNVT type defined in LonMark SNVT List, NCIs of an operator-defined network variable type, or hardware settings on controller itself for all settings and parameters used by application in which it is used.
10. Programmable controllers shall conform to LonMark Interoperability Guidelines and have LonMark certification.

K. Input and Output Point Interface:

1. Hardwired input and output points shall connect to network, programmable application and application-specific controllers.
2. Input and output points shall be protected so shorting of point to itself, to another point, or to ground will not damage controller.
3. Input and output points shall be protected from voltage up to 24 V of any duration so that contact will not damage controller.
4. Als:
 - a. Als shall include monitoring of low-voltage (zero- to 10-V dc), current (4 to 20 mA) and resistance signals from thermistor and RTD sensors.
 - b. Als shall be compatible with, and field configurable to, sensor and transmitters installed.
 - c. Controller Als shall perform analog-to-digital (A-to-D) conversion with a minimum resolution of [8] [12] <Insert value> bits or better to comply with accuracy requirements indicated.
 - d. Signal conditioning including transient rejection shall be provided for each AI.

- e. Capable of being individually calibrated for zero and span.
 - f. Incorporate common-mode noise rejection of at least 50 dB from zero to 100 Hz for differential inputs, and normal-mode noise rejection of at least 20 dB at 60 Hz from a source impedance of 10000 ohms.
5. AOs:
- a. Controller AOs shall perform analog-to-digital (A-to-D) conversion with a minimum resolution of [8] [12] <Insert value> bits or better to comply with accuracy requirements indicated.
 - b. Output signals shall have a range of [4 to 20 mA dc] [or] [zero- to 10-V dc] as required to include proper control of output device.
 - c. Capable of being individually calibrated for zero and span.
 - d. AOs shall not exhibit a drift of greater than 0.4 percent of range per year.
6. BIs:
- a. Controller BIs shall accept contact closures and shall ignore transients of less than 5-ms duration.
 - b. Isolation and protection against an applied steady-state voltage of up to 180-V ac peak.
 - c. BIs shall include a wetting current of at least 12 mA to be compatible with commonly available control devices and shall be protected against effects of contact bounce and noise.
 - d. BIs shall sense "dry contact" closure without external power (other than that provided by the controller) being applied.
 - e. Pulse accumulation input points shall comply with all requirements of BIs and accept up to 10 pulses per second for pulse accumulation. Buffer shall be provided to totalize pulses. Pulse accumulator shall accept rates of at least 20 pulses per second. The totalized value shall be reset to zero on operator's command.
7. BOs:
- a. Controller BOs shall include relay contact closures or triac outputs for momentary and maintained operation of output devices.
 - 1) Relay contact closures shall have a minimum duration of 0.1 second. Relays shall include at least 180 V of isolation. Electromagnetic interference suppression shall be provided on all output lines to limit transients to non-damaging levels. Minimum contact rating shall be 1 A at 24-V ac.
 - 2) Triac outputs shall include at least 180 V of isolation. Minimum contact rating shall be 1 A at 24-V ac.
 - b. BOs shall include for two-state operation or a pulsed low-voltage signal for pulse-width modulation control.
 - c. BOs shall be selectable for either normally open or normally closed operation.
 - d. Include tristate outputs (two coordinated BOs) for control of three-point floating-type electronic actuators without feedback.

- e. Limit use of three-point floating devices to VAV terminal unit control applications, **[and other applications indicated on Drawings,]** <Insert applications>. Control algorithms shall operate actuator to one end of its stroke once every **[12] [24]** <Insert time> hours for verification of operator tracking.

2.9 NETWORK CONTROLLERS

A. General Network Controller Requirements:

1. Include adequate number of controllers to achieve performance indicated.
2. System shall consist of one or more independent, standalone, microprocessor-based network controllers to manage global strategies indicated.
3. Controller shall have enough memory to support its operating system, database, and programming requirements.
4. Data shall be shared between networked controllers and other network devices.
5. Operating system of controller shall manage input and output communication signals to allow distributed controllers to share real and virtual object information and allow for central monitoring and alarms.
6. Controllers **[that perform scheduling]** shall have a real-time clock.
7. Controller shall continually check status of its processor and memory circuits. If an abnormal operation is detected, controller shall assume a predetermined failure mode and generate an alarm notification.
8. Controllers shall be fully programmable.

B. Communication:

1. Network controllers shall communicate with other devices on DDC system **[Level one]** <Insert level> network.
2. Network controller also shall perform routing if connected to a network of programmable application and application-specific controllers.

C. Operator Interface:

1. Controller shall be equipped with a service communications port for connection to a portable operator's workstation **[or mobile device]**.
2. Local Keypad and Display:
 - a. Equip controller with local keypad and digital display for interrogating and editing data.
 - b. Use of keypad and display shall require security password.

D. Serviceability:

1. Controller shall be equipped with diagnostic LEDs or other form of local visual indication of power, communication, and processor.
2. Wiring and cable connections shall be made to field-removable, modular terminal strips or to a termination card connected by a ribbon cable.
3. Controller shall maintain BIOS and programming information in event of a power loss for at least **[72] [96]** <Insert number> hours.

2.10 PROGRAMMABLE APPLICATION CONTROLLERS

A. General Programmable Application Controller Requirements:

1. Include adequate number of controllers to achieve performance indicated.
2. Controller shall have enough memory to support its operating system, database, and programming requirements.
3. Data shall be shared between networked controllers and other network devices.
4. Operating system of controller shall manage input and output communication signals to allow distributed controllers to share real and virtual object information and allow for central monitoring and alarms.
5. Controllers **[that perform scheduling]** shall have a real-time clock.
6. Controller shall continually check status of its processor and memory circuits. If an abnormal operation is detected, controller shall assume a predetermined failure mode and generate an alarm notification.
7. Controllers shall be fully programmable.

B. Communication:

1. Programmable application controllers shall communicate with other devices on network.

C. Operator Interface:

1. Controller shall be equipped with a service communications port for connection to a portable operator's workstation **[or mobile device]**.
2. Local Keypad and Display:
 - a. Equip controller with local keypad and digital display for interrogating and editing data.
 - b. Use of keypad and display shall require security password.

D. Serviceability:

1. Controller shall be equipped with diagnostic LEDs or other form of local visual indication of power, communication, and processor.
2. Wiring and cable connections shall be made to field-removable, modular terminal strips or to a termination card connected by a ribbon cable.
3. Controller shall maintain BIOS and programming information in event of a power loss for at least 72 hours.

2.11 APPLICATION-SPECIFIC CONTROLLERS

A. Description: Microprocessor-based controllers, which through hardware or firmware design are dedicated to control a specific piece of equipment. Controllers are not fully user-programmable but are configurable and customizable for operation of equipment they are designed to control.

1. Capable of standalone operation and shall continue to include control functions without being connected to network.
2. Data shall be shared between networked controllers and other network devices.

- B. Communication: Application-specific controllers shall communicate with other application-specific controller and devices on network, and to programmable application and network controllers.
- C. Operator Interface: Controller shall be equipped with a service communications port for connection to a portable operator's workstation. **[Connection shall extend to port on space temperature sensor that is connected to controller.]**
- D. Serviceability:
 - 1. Controller shall be equipped with diagnostic LEDs or other form of local visual indication of power, communication, and processor.
 - 2. Wiring and cable connections shall be made to field-removable, modular terminal strips or to a termination card connected by a ribbon cable.
 - 3. Controller shall use nonvolatile memory and maintain all BIOS and programming information in event of power loss.

2.12 CONTROLLER SOFTWARE

- A. General Controller Software Requirements:
 - 1. Software applications shall reside and operate in controllers. Editing of applications shall occur at operator workstations.
 - 2. I/O points shall be identified by up to [30] <Insert number>-character point name and up to [16] <Insert number>-character point descriptor. Same names shall be used at operator workstations.
 - 3. Control functions shall be executed within controllers using DDC algorithms.
 - 4. Controllers shall be configured to use stored default values to ensure fail-safe operation. Default values shall be used when there is a failure of a connected input instrument or loss of communication of a global point value.
- B. Security:
 - 1. Operator access shall be secured using individual security passwords and user names.
 - 2. Passwords shall restrict operator to points, applications, and system functions as assigned by system manager.
 - 3. Operator log-on and log-off attempts shall be recorded.
 - 4. System shall protect itself from unauthorized use by automatically logging off after last keystroke. The delay time shall be operator-definable.
- C. Scheduling: Include capability to schedule each point or group of points in system. Each schedule shall consist of the following:
 - 1. Weekly Schedule:
 - a. Include separate schedules for each day of week.
 - b. Each schedule should include the capability for start, stop, optimal start, optimal stop, and night economizer.
 - c. Each schedule may consist of up to 10 events.

- d. When a group of objects are scheduled together, include capability to adjust start and stop times for each member.
- 2. Exception Schedules:
 - a. Include ability for operator to designate any day of the year as an exception schedule.
 - b. Exception schedules may be defined up to a year in advance. Once an exception schedule is executed, it will be discarded and replaced by regular schedule for that day of week.
- 3. Holiday Schedules:
 - a. Include capability for operator to define up to 99 special or holiday schedules.
 - b. Schedules may be placed on scheduling calendar and will be repeated each year.
 - c. Operator shall be able to define length of each holiday period.
- D. System Coordination:
 - 1. Include standard application for proper coordination of equipment.
 - 2. Application shall include operator with a method of grouping together equipment based on function and location.
 - 3. Group may then be used for scheduling and other applications.
- E. Binary Alarms:
 - 1. Each binary point shall be set to alarm based on operator-specified state.
 - 2. Include capability to automatically and manually disable alarming.
- F. Analog Alarms:
 - 1. Each analog object shall have both high and low alarm limits.
 - 2. Alarming shall be able to be automatically and manually disabled.
- G. Alarm Reporting:
 - 1. Operator shall be able to determine action to be taken in event of an alarm.
 - 2. Alarms shall be routed to appropriate operator workstations based on time and other conditions.
 - 3. Alarm shall be able to start programs, print, be logged in event log, generate custom messages, and display graphics.
- H. Remote Communication:
 - 1. System shall have ability to dial out in the event of an alarm.
- I. Electric Power Demand Limiting:

1. Demand-limiting program shall monitor building or other operator-defined electric power consumption from signals connected to electric power meter or from a watt transducer or current transformer.
2. Demand-limiting program shall predict probable power demand such that action can be taken to prevent exceeding demand limit. When demand prediction exceeds demand limit, action will be taken to reduce loads in a predetermined manner. When demand prediction indicates demand limit will not be exceeded, action will be taken to restore loads in a predetermined manner.
3. Demand reduction shall be accomplished by the following means:
 - a. Reset air-handling unit supply temperature set points.
 - b. Reset space temperature set points.
 - c. De-energize equipment based on priority.
4. Demand-limiting parameters, frequency of calculations, time intervals, and other relevant variables shall be based on the means by which electric power service provider computes demand charges.
5. Include demand-limiting prediction and control for any individual meter monitored by system or for total of any combination of meters.
6. Include means operator to make the following changes online:
 - a. Addition and deletion of loads controlled.
 - b. Changes in demand intervals.
 - c. Changes in demand limit for meter(s).
 - d. Maximum shutoff time for equipment.
 - e. Minimum shutoff time for equipment.
 - f. Select rotational or sequential shedding and restoring.
 - g. Shed and restore priority.
7. Include the following information and reports, to be available on an hourly, daily, weekly, monthly and annual basis:
 - a. Total electric consumption.
 - b. Peak demand.
 - c. Date and time of peak demand.
 - d. Daily peak demand.
- J. Maintenance Management: System shall monitor equipment status and generate maintenance messages based on operator-designated run-time, starts, and calendar date limits.
- K. Sequencing: Include application software based on sequences of operation indicated to properly sequence chillers, boilers, and other applicable HVAC equipment.
- L. Control Loops:
 1. Support any of the following control loops, as applicable to control required:
 - a. Two-position (on/off, open/close, slow/fast) control.
 - b. Proportional control.

- c. Proportional plus integral (PI) control.
 - d. Proportional plus integral plus derivative (PID) control.
 - 1) Include PID algorithms with direct or reverse action and anti-windup.
 - 2) Algorithm shall calculate a time-varying analog value used to position an output or stage a series of outputs.
 - 3) Controlled variable, set point, and PID gains shall be operator-selectable.
 - e. Adaptive (automatic tuning).
- M. Staggered Start: Application shall prevent all controlled equipment from simultaneously restarting after a power outage. Order which equipment (or groups of equipment) is started, along with the time delay between starts, shall be operator-selectable.
- N. Energy Calculations:
- 1. Include software to allow instantaneous power or flow rates to be accumulated and converted to energy usage data.
 - 2. Include an algorithm that calculates a sliding-window average (rolling average). Algorithm shall be flexible to allow window intervals to be operator specified (such as 15, 30, or 60 minutes).
 - 3. Include an algorithm that calculates a fixed-window average. A digital input signal shall define start of window period (such as signal from utility meter) to synchronize fixed-window average with that used by utility.
- O. Anti-Short Cycling:
- 1. BO points shall be protected from short cycling.
 - 2. Feature shall allow minimum on-time and off-time to be selected.
- P. On and Off Control with Differential:
- 1. Include an algorithm that allows a BO to be cycled based on a controlled variable and set point.
 - 2. Algorithm shall be direct- or reverse-acting and incorporate an adjustable differential.
- Q. Run-Time Totalization:
- 1. Include software to totalize run-times for all BI **[and BO]**points.
 - 2. A high run-time alarm shall be assigned, if required, by operator.
- 2.13 ENCLOSURES
- A. General Enclosure Requirements:
- 1. House each controller and associated control accessories in a **[single]**enclosure. Enclosure shall serve as central tie-in point for control devices such as switches, transmitters, transducers, power supplies and transformers.
 - 2. Do not house more than one controller in a single enclosure.

3. Include enclosure door with key locking mechanism. Key locks alike for all enclosures and include one pair of keys per enclosure.
4. Equip doors of enclosures housing controllers and components with analog or digital displays with windows to allow visual observation of displays without opening enclosure door.
5. Individual wall-mounted single-door enclosures shall not exceed [36 inches (900 mm)] <Insert dimension> wide and [48 inches (1200 mm)] [60 inches (1500 mm)] <Insert dimension> high.
6. Individual wall-mounted double-door enclosures shall not exceed [60 inches (1500 mm)] <Insert dimension> wide and [36 inches (900 mm)] <Insert dimension> high.
7. Include wall-mounted enclosures with brackets suitable for mounting enclosures to wall or freestanding support stand as indicated.
8. Supply each enclosure with a complete set of as-built schematics, tubing, and wiring diagrams and product literature located in a pocket on inside of door. [For enclosures with windows, include pocket on bottom of enclosure.]

B. Internal Arrangement:

1. Internal layout of enclosure shall group and protect pneumatic, electric, and electronic components associated with a controller, but not an integral part of controller.
2. Arrange layout to group similar products together.
3. Include a barrier between line-voltage and low-voltage electrical and electronic products.
4. Factory or shop install products, tubing, cabling and wiring complying with requirements and standards indicated.
5. Terminate field cable and wire using heavy-duty terminal blocks.
6. Include spare terminals, equal to not less than [10] [20] <Insert number> percent of used terminals.
7. Include spade lugs for stranded cable and wire.
8. Install a maximum of two wires on each side of a terminal.
9. Include enclosure field power supply with a toggle-type switch located at entrance inside enclosure to disconnect power.
10. Include enclosure with a line-voltage nominal 20-A GFCI duplex receptacle for service and testing tools. Wire receptacle on hot side of enclosure disconnect switch and include with a 5-A circuit breaker.
11. Mount products within enclosure on removable internal panel(s).
12. Include products mounted in enclosures with engraved, laminated phenolic nameplates (black letters on a white background). The nameplates shall have at least 1/4-inch- (6-mm-) high lettering.
13. Route tubing cable and wire located inside enclosure within a raceway with a continuous removable cover.
14. Label each end of cable, wire and tubing in enclosure following an approved identification system that extends from field I/O connection and all intermediate connections throughout length to controller connection.
15. Size enclosure internal panel to include at least [25] <Insert number> percent spare area on face of panel.

C. Environmental Requirements:

1. Evaluate temperature and humidity requirements of each product to be installed within each enclosure.
2. Calculate enclosure internal operating temperature considering heat dissipation of all products installed within enclosure and ambient effects (solar, conduction and wind) on enclosure.
3. Where required by application, include temperature-controlled electrical heat to maintain inside of enclosure above minimum operating temperature of product with most stringent requirement.
4. Where required by application, include temperature-controlled ventilation fans with filtered louver(s) to maintain inside of enclosure below maximum operating temperature of product with most stringent requirement.

D. Wall-Mounted, NEMA 250, Type 1:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Enclosure shall be NRTL listed according to UL 50 or UL 50E.
3. Construct enclosure of steel, not less than:
 - a. Enclosure size less than 24 in. (600 mm): [0.053 in. (1.35 mm)] [or] [0.067 in. (1.7 mm)] thick.
 - b. Enclosure size 24 in. (600 mm) and larger: [0.067 in. (1.7 mm)] [or] [0.093 in. (2.36 mm)] thick.
4. Finish enclosure inside and out with polyester powder coating that is electrostatically applied and then baked to bond to substrate.
 - a. Exterior color shall be [white] [ANSI 61 gray] [selected by Architect] [manufacturer's standard] <Insert color>.
 - b. Interior color shall be [white] [ANSI 61 gray] [manufacturer's standard].
5. Hinged door full size of front face of enclosure and supported using:
 - a. Enclosures sizes less than 36 in. (900 mm) tall: Multiple butt hinges.
 - b. Enclosures sizes 36 in. (900 mm) tall and larger: Continuous piano hinges.
6. Removable internal panel with a white polyester powder coating that is electrostatically applied and then baked to bond to substrate.
 - a. Size less than 24 in. (600 mm): [Solid] [or] [Perforated] steel, 0.053 in. (1.35 mm) thick.
 - b. Size 24 in. (600 mm) and larger: Solid [aluminum, 0.10 in. (3 mm)] [or] [steel, 0.093 in. (2.36 mm)] thick.
7. Internal panel mounting hardware, grounding hardware and sealing washers.
8. Grounding stud on enclosure body.
9. Thermoplastic pocket on inside of door for record Drawings and Product Data.

E. Wall Mounted NEMA 250, Types 4 and 12:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Enclosure shall be NRTL listed according to UL 508A.
3. Seam and joints are continuously welded and ground smooth.
4. Where recessed enclosures are indicated, include enclosures with face flange for flush mounting.
5. Externally formed body flange around perimeter of enclosure face for continuous perimeter seamless gasket door seal.
6. Single-door enclosure sizes up to 60 inches tall by 36 inches wide (1500 mm tall by 900 mm wide).
7. Double-door enclosure sizes up to 36 inches tall by 60 inches wide (900 mm tall by 1500 mm wide).
8. Construct enclosure of steel, not less than the following:
 - a. Size Less Than 24 Inches (600 mm): [0.053 inch (1.35 mm)] [or] [0.067 inch (1.7 mm)] thick.
 - b. Size 24 Inches (600 mm) and Larger: 0.067 inch (1.7 mm) thick.
9. Finish enclosure with polyester powder coating that is electrostatically applied and then baked to bond to substrate.
 - a. Exterior color shall be [white] [ANSI 61 gray] [as selected by Architect] [manufacturer's standard] <Insert color>.
 - b. Interior color shall be [white] [ANSI 61 gray] [manufacturer's standard].
10. Corner-formed door, full size of enclosure face, supported using multiple concealed hinges with easily removable hinge pins.
 - a. Sizes through 24 Inches (600 mm) Tall: Two hinges.
 - b. Sizes between 24 Inches (600 mm) through 48 Inches (1200 mm) Tall: Three hinges.
 - c. Sizes Larger 48 Inches (1200 mm) Tall: Four hinges.
11. Double-door enclosures with overlapping door design to include unobstructed full-width access.
 - a. Single-door enclosures 48 inches (1200 mm) and taller, and all double-door enclosures, with three-point (top, middle and bottom) latch system.
12. Removable internal panel with a white polyester powder coating that is electrostatically applied and then baked to bond to substrate.
 - a. Size Less Than 24 Inches (600 mm): [Solid] [or] [perforated] steel, 0.053 inch (1.35 mm) thick.
 - b. Size 24 Inches (600 mm) and Larger: Solid [aluminum, 0.10 inch (3 mm)] [or] [steel, 0.093 inch (2.36 mm)] thick.
13. Internal panel mounting studs with hardware, grounding hardware, and sealing washers.
14. Grounding stud on enclosure body.
15. Thermoplastic pocket on inside of door for record Drawings and Product Data.

F. Accessories:

1. Electric Heater:

- a. Aluminum housing with brushed finish.
- b. Thermostatic control with adjustable set point from zero to 100 deg F (Minus 18 to 38 deg C).
- c. Capacity: 100, 200, 400, and 800 W as required by application.
- d. Fan draws cool air from bottom of enclosure and passes air across thermostat and heating elements before being released into enclosure cavity. Heated air is discharged through the top of heater.

2. Ventilation Fans, Filtered Intake and Exhaust Grilles:

- a. Number and size of fans, filters and grilles as required by application.
- b. Compact cooling fans engineered for 50,000 hours of continuous operation without lubrication or service.
- c. Fans capable of being installed on any surface and in any position within enclosure for spot cooling or air circulation.
- d. Thermostatic control with adjustable set point from 32 to 140 deg F (Zero to 60 deg C).
- e. Airflow Capacity at Zero Pressure:
 - 1) 4-Inch (100-mm) Fan: 100 cfm (47 L/s).
 - 2) 6-Inch (150-mm) Fan: 240 cfm (113 L/s).
 - 3) 10-Inch (250-mm) Fan: 560 cfm (264 L/s).
- f. Maximum operating temperature of 158 deg F (70 deg C).
- g. 4-inch (100-mm) fan thermally protected and provided with permanently lubricated ball-bearings.
- h. 6- and 10-inch (150- and 250-mm) fans with ball-bearing construction and split capacitor motors thermally protected to avoid premature failure.
- i. Dynamically balanced impellers molded from polycarbonate material.
- j. Fan furnished with power cord and polarized plug for power connection.
- k. Fan brackets, finger guards and mounting hardware provided with fans to complete installation.
- l. Removable Intake and Exhaust Grilles: **[ABS plastic] [or] [stainless steel]** of size to match fan size and suitable for NEMA 250, Types 1 and 12 enclosures.
- m. Filters for NEMA 250, Type 1 Enclosures: Washable **[foam] [or] [aluminum]**, of a size to match intake grille.
- n. Filters for NEMA 250, Type 12 Enclosures: Disposable, of a size to match intake grille.

3. Framed Fixed Window Kit for NEMA 250, Types 4, 4X, and 12 Enclosures:

- a. 0.25-inch- (6-mm-) thick, scratch-resistant acrylic or polycarbonate window mounted in a metal frame matching adjacent door material.
- b. Enclosure types, except NEMA 250 Type 1, shall have a continuous gasket material around perimeter of window and frame to provide watertight seal.

- c. Window kit shall be factory or shop installed before shipment to Project.
- 4. Frameless Fixed Window Kit for NEMA 250, Type 1 Enclosures:
 - a. ~~0.125-inch-~~ (3-mm-) thick, polycarbonate window mounted in enclosure door material.
 - b. Window attached to door with screw fasteners and continuous strip of high-strength double-sided tape around window perimeter.
 - c. Window kit shall be factory or shop installed before shipment to Project.
- 5. Frame Fixed or Hinged Window Kit for NEMA 250, Types 1 and 12 Enclosures:
 - a. ~~0.25-inch-~~ (6-mm-) thick, scratch-resistant acrylic or polycarbonate window mounted in a metal frame matching adjacent door material.
 - b. Enclosure types, except NEMA 250 Type 1, shall have a continuous gasket material around perimeter of window and frame to provide watertight seal.
 - c. Window kit shall be factory or shop installed before shipment to Project.
- 6. Bar handle with keyed cylinder lock set.

2.14 RELAYS

A. General-Purpose Relays:

- 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- 2. Relays shall be heavy duty and rated for at least 10 A at 250-V ac and 60 Hz.
- 3. Relays shall be either double pole double throw (DPDT) or three-pole double throw, depending on the control application.
- 4. Use a plug-in-style relay with an eight-pin octal plug for DPDT relays and an 11-pin octal plug for three-pole double-throw relays.
- 5. Construct the contacts of either silver cadmium oxide or gold.
- 6. Enclose the relay in a clear transparent polycarbonate dust-tight cover.
- 7. Relays shall have LED indication and a manual reset and push-to-test button.
- 8. Performance:
 - a. Mechanical Life: At least 10 million cycles.
 - b. Electrical Life: At least 100,000 cycles at rated load.
 - c. Pickup Time: 15 ms or less.
 - d. Dropout Time: 10 ms or less.
 - e. Pull-in Voltage: 85 percent of rated voltage.
 - f. Dropout Voltage: 50 percent of nominal rated voltage.
 - g. Power Consumption: 2 VA.
 - h. Ambient Operating Temperatures: ~~Minus 40 to 115 deg F~~ (Minus 40 to 46 deg C).
- 9. Equip relays with coil transient suppression to limit transients to non-damaging levels.
- 10. Plug each relay into an industry-standard, 35-mm DIN rail socket. Plug all relays located in control panels into sockets that are mounted on a DIN rail.
- 11. Relay socket shall have screw terminals. Mold into the socket the coincident screw terminal numbers and associated octal pin numbers.

B. Multifunction Time-Delay Relays:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Relays shall be continuous duty and rated for at least 10 A at 240-V ac and 60 Hz.
3. Relays shall be DPDT relay with up to eight programmable functions to provide on/off delay, interval and recycle timing functions.
4. Use a plug-in-style relay with either an 8- or 11-pin octal plug.
5. Construct the contacts of either silver cadmium oxide or gold.
6. Enclose the relay in a dust-tight cover.
7. Include knob and dial scale for setting delay time.
8. Performance:
 - a. Mechanical Life: At least 10 million cycles.
 - b. Electrical Life: At least 100,000 cycles at rated load.
 - c. Timing Ranges: Multiple ranges from 0.1 seconds to 100 minutes.
 - d. Repeatability: Within 2 percent.
 - e. Recycle Time: 45 ms.
 - f. Minimum Pulse Width Control: 50 ms.
 - g. Power Consumption: 5 VA or less at 120-V ac.
 - h. Ambient Operating Temperatures: Minus 40 to 115 deg F (Minus 40 to 46 deg C).
9. Equip relays with coil transient suppression to limit transients to non-damaging levels.
10. Plug each relay into an industry-standard, 35-mm DIN rail socket. Plug all relays located in control panels into sockets that are mounted on a DIN rail.
11. Relay socket shall have screw terminals. Mold into the socket the coincident screw terminal numbers and associated octal pin numbers.

C. Latching Relays:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Relays shall be continuous duty and rated for at least 10 A at 250-V ac and 60 Hz.
3. Relays shall be either DPDT or three-pole double throw, depending on the control application.
4. Use a plug-in-style relay with a multibladed plug.
5. Construct the contacts of either silver cadmium oxide or gold.
6. Enclose the relay in a clear transparent polycarbonate dust-tight cover.
7. Performance:
 - a. Mechanical Life: At least 10 million cycles.
 - b. Electrical Life: At least 100,000 cycles at rated load.
 - c. Pickup Time: 15 ms or less.
 - d. Dropout Time: 10 ms or less.
 - e. Pull-in Voltage: 85 percent of rated voltage.
 - f. Dropout Voltage: 50 percent of nominal rated voltage.
 - g. Power Consumption: 2 VA.
 - h. Ambient Operating Temperatures: Minus 40 to 115 deg F (Minus 40 to 46 deg C).
8. Equip relays with coil transient suppression to limit transients to non-damaging levels.

9. Plug each relay into an industry-standard, 35-mm DIN rail socket. Plug all relays located in control panels into sockets that are mounted on a DIN rail.
10. Relay socket shall have screw terminals. Mold into the socket the coincident screw terminal numbers and associated octal pin numbers.

D. Current Sensing Relay:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Monitors ac current.
3. Independent adjustable controls for pickup and dropout current.
4. Energized when supply voltage is present and current is above pickup setting.
5. De-energizes when monitored current is below dropout current.
6. Dropout current is adjustable from 50 to 95 percent of pickup current.
7. Include a current transformer, if required for application.
8. House current sensing relay and current transformer in its own enclosure. Use NEMA 250, Type 12 enclosure for indoors and NEMA 250, Type 4 for outdoors.

E. Combination On-Off Status Sensor and On-Off Relay:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Description:
 - a. On-off control and status indication in a single device.
 - b. LED status indication of activated relay and current trigger.
 - c. Closed-Open-Auto override switch located on the load side of the relay.
3. Performance:
 - a. Ambient Temperature: **Minus 30 to 140 deg F (Minus 34 to 60 deg C).**
 - b. Voltage Rating: Single-phase loads rated for 300-V ac. Three-phase loads rated for 600-V ac.
4. Status Indication:
 - a. Current Sensor: Integral sensing for single-phase loads up to 20 A and external solid or split sensing ring for three-phase loads up to 150 A.
 - b. Current Sensor Range: As required by application.
 - c. Current Set Point: **[Fixed] [Adjustable] [Fixed or adjustable as required by application].**
 - d. Current Sensor Output:
 - 1) Solid-state, single-pole double-throw contact rated for 30-V ac and dc and for 0.4 A.
 - 2) Solid-state, single-pole double-throw contact rated for 120-V ac and 1.0 A.
 - 3) Analog, zero- to 5- or 10-V dc.
 - 4) Analog, 4 to 20 mA, loop powered.
5. Relay: Single-pole double-throw, continuous-duty coil; rated for 10-million mechanical cycles.

6. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure.

2.15 ELECTRICAL POWER DEVICES

A. Transformers:

1. Transformer shall be sized for the total connected load, plus an additional 25 percent of connected load.
2. Transformer shall be at least **[40]** **[100]** **<Insert value>** VA.
3. Transformer shall have both primary and secondary fuses.

B. DC Power Supply:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Plug-in style suitable for mating with a standard eight-pin octal socket. Include the power supply with a mating mounting socket.
3. Enclose circuitry in a housing.
4. Include both line and load regulation to ensure a stable output. To protect both the power supply and the load, power supply shall have an automatic current limiting circuit.
5. Performance:
 - a. Output voltage nominally 25-V dc within 5 percent.
 - b. Output current up to 100 mA.
 - c. Input voltage nominally 120-V ac, 60 Hz.
 - d. Load regulation within 0.5 percent from zero- to 100-mA load.
 - e. Line regulation within 0.5 percent at a 100-mA load for a 10 percent line change.
 - f. Stability within 0.1 percent of rated volts for 24 hours after a 20-minute warmup.

2.16 UNINTERRUPTABLE POWER SUPPLY (UPS) UNITS FOR WORKSTATIONS

A. 250 through 1000 VA:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. UPS units shall provide continuous, regulated output power without using their batteries during brown-out, surge, and spike conditions.
3. Load served shall not exceed 75 percent of UPS rated capacity, including power factor of connected loads.
 - a. Larger-capacity units shall be provided for systems with larger connected loads.
 - b. UPS shall provide **[five]** **<Insert number>** minutes of battery power.
4. Performance:
 - a. Input Voltage: Single phase, 120- or 230-V ac, compatible with field power source.
 - b. Load Power Factor Range (Crest Factor): 0.65 to 1.0.
 - c. Output Voltage: 101- to 132-V ac, while input voltage varies between 89 and 152-V ac.
 - d. On Battery Output Voltage: Sine wave.

- e. Inverter overload capacity shall be minimum 150 percent for 30 seconds.
 - f. Recharge time shall be a maximum of six hours to 90 percent capacity after full discharge to cutoff.
 - g. Transfer Time: 6 ms.
 - h. Surge Voltage Withstand Capacity: IEEE C62.41, Categories A and B; 6 kV/200 and 500 A; 100-kHz ringwave.
5. UPS shall be automatic during fault or overload conditions.
 6. Unit with integral line-interactive, power condition topology to eliminate all power contaminants.
 7. Include front panel with power switch and visual indication of power, battery, fault and temperature.
 8. Unit shall include an audible alarm of faults and front panel silence feature.
 9. Unit with four NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-15R receptacles.
 10. UPS shall include dry contacts (digital output points) for low battery condition and battery-on (primary utility power failure)[**and connect the points to the DDC system**].
 11. Batteries shall be sealed lead-acid type and be maintenance free. Battery replacement shall be front accessible by user without dropping load.
 12. Include tower models installed in ventilated cabinets to the particular installation location.
- B. 1000 through 3000 VA:
1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
 2. UPS units shall provide continuous, regulated output power without using their batteries during brown-out, surge, and spike conditions.
 3. Load served shall not exceed 75 percent of UPS rated capacity, including power factor of connected loads.
 - a. Larger-capacity units, or multiple units, shall be provided for systems with larger connected loads.
 - b. UPS shall provide **[five] [10] <Insert number>** minutes of battery power.
 4. Performance:
 - a. Input Voltage: Single phase, 120-V ac, plus 20 to minus 30 percent.
 - b. Power Factor: Minimum 0.97 at full load.
 - c. Output Voltage: Single phase, 120-V ac, within 3 percent, steady state with rated output current of 10.0 A, 30.0-A peak.
 - d. Inverter overload capacity shall be minimum 150 percent for 30 seconds.
 - e. Recharge time shall be a maximum of eight hours to 90 percent capacity.
 5. UPS bypass shall be automatic during fault or overload conditions.
 6. UPS shall include dry contacts (digital output points) for low battery condition and battery-on (primary utility power failure)[**and connect the points to the DDC system**].
 7. Batteries shall be sealed lead-acid type and be maintenance free.
 8. Include tower models installed in ventilated cabinets or rack models installed on matching racks, as applicable to the particular installation location and space availability/configuration.

2.17 PIPING AND TUBING

A. Pneumatic, and Pressure Instrument Signal Air, Tubing and Piping:

1. Products in this paragraph are intended for use with the following:
 - a. Main air and signal air to pneumatically controlled instruments, actuators and other control devices and accessories.
 - b. Signal air between pressure instruments, such as sensors, switches, transmitters, controllers, and accessories.
2. Copper Tubing:
 - a. Seamless phosphor deoxidized copper, soft annealed or drawn tempered, with chemical and physical properties according to ASTM B 75.
 - b. Performance, dimensions, weight and tolerance according to ASTM B 280.
 - c. Diameter, as required by application, not less than nominal 0.25 inch (6 mm).
 - d. Wall thickness, as required by the application, but not less than 0.030 inch (0.8 mm).
3. Copper Tubing Connectors and Fittings:
 - a. Brass, compression type.
 - 1) [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
 - b. Brass, solder-joint type.
 - 1) [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
4. Polyethylene Tubing:
 - a. Fire-resistant black virgin polyethylene according to ASTM D 1248, Type 1, Class C and Grade 5.
 - b. Tubing shall comply with stress crack test according to ASTM D 1693.
 - c. Diameter, as required by application, of not less than nominal 0.25 inch (6 mm).
5. Polyethylene Tubing Connectors and Fittings:
 - a. Brass, barbed fittings.
 - 1) [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
 - b. Brass, compression type.
 - 1) [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)

B. Process Tubing:

1. Products in this paragraph are intended for signals to instruments connected to liquid and steam systems.
2. Copper Tubing:
 - a. Seamless phosphor deoxidized copper, soft annealed or drawn tempered with chemical and physical properties according to ASTM B 75.
 - b. Performance, dimensions, weight and tolerance according to ASTM B 280.
 - c. Diameter, as required by application, of not less than nominal **0.25 inch (6 mm)**.
 - d. Wall thickness, as required by application, but not less than **0.030 inch (0.8 mm)**.
3. Copper Tubing Connectors and Fittings:
 - a. Brass, compression type.
 - 1) [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
 - b. Brass, solder-joint type.
 - 1) [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)

2.18 CONTROL WIRE AND CABLE

A. Wire: Single conductor control wiring above 24 V.

1. Wire size shall be at least **[No. 18] [No. 16] [No. 14]** **<Insert value>** AWG.
2. Conductor shall be 7/24 soft annealed copper strand with **2- to 2.5-inch (50- to 65-mm)** lay.
3. Conductor insulation shall be 600 V, Type THWN or Type THHN, and 90 deg C according to UL 83.
4. Conductor colors shall be black (hot), white (neutral), and green (ground).
5. Furnish wire on spools.

B. Single Twisted Shielded Instrumentation Cable above 24 V:

1. Wire size shall be a minimum **[No. 18] [No. 20] [No. 22]** **<Insert value>** AWG.
2. Conductors shall be a twisted, 7/24 soft annealed copper strand with a **2- to 2.5-inch (50- to 65-mm)** lay.
3. Conductor insulation shall have a Type THHN/THWN or Type TFN rating.
4. Shielding shall be 100 percent type, 0.35/0.5-mil aluminum/Mylar tape, helically applied with 25 percent overlap, and aluminum side in with tinned copper drain wire.
5. Outer jacket insulation shall have a 600-V, 90-deg C rating and shall be Type TC cable.
6. For twisted pair, conductor colors shall be black and white. For twisted triad, conductor colors shall be black, red and white.
7. Furnish wire on spools.

C. Single Twisted Shielded Instrumentation Cable 24 V and Less:

1. Wire size shall be a minimum **[No. 18] [No. 20] [No. 22]** <Insert value> AWG.
2. Conductors shall be a twisted, 7/24 soft annealed copper stranding with a **2- to 2.5-inch (50- to 65-mm)** lay.
3. Conductor insulation shall have a nominal 15-mil thickness, constructed from flame-retardant PVC.
4. Shielding shall be 100 percent type, 1.35-mil aluminum/polymer tape, helically applied with 25 percent overlap, and aluminum side in with tinned copper drain wire.
5. Outer jacket insulation shall have a 300-V, 105-deg C rating and shall be Type PLTC cable.
6. For twisted pair, conductor colors shall be black and white. For twisted triad, conductor colors shall be black, red and white.
7. Furnish wire on spools.

D. LAN and Communication Cable: Comply with DDC system manufacturer requirements for network being installed.

1. Cable shall be balanced twisted pair.
2. Comply with the following requirements and for balanced twisted pair cable described in **[Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."] [Section 271513 "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling."]**
3. Cable shall be plenum rated.
4. Cable shall comply with NFPA 70.
5. Cable shall have a unique color that is different from other cables used on Project.

2.19 CONTROL POWER WIRING AND RACEWAYS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" electrical power conductors and cables.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for electrical power raceways and boxes.

2.20 ACCESSORIES

A. Damper Blade Limit Switches:

1. Sense positive open and/or closed position of the damper blades.
2. NEMA 250, Type 13, oil-tight construction.
3. Arrange for the mounting application.
4. Additional waterproof enclosure when required by its environment.
5. Arrange to prevent "over-center" operation.

B. Manual Valves:

1. Needle Type:

- a. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
 - b. PTFE packing.
 - c. Construct of brass for use with copper and polyethylene tubing and of stainless steel for use with stainless-steel tubing.
 - d. Aluminum T-bar handle.
 - e. Include tubing connections.
2. Ball Type:
- a. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
 - b. Body: Bronze ASTM B 62 or ASTM B 61.
 - c. Ball: Type 316 stainless steel.
 - d. Stem: Type 316 stainless steel.
 - e. Seats: Reinforced PTFE.
 - f. Packing Ring: Reinforced PTFE.
 - g. Lever: Stainless steel with a vinyl grip.
 - h. 600 WOG.
 - i. Threaded end connections.

2.21 IDENTIFICATION

A. Instrument Air Pipe and Tubing:

1. Engraved tag shall bear the following information:
 - a. Service (Example): "Instrument Air."
 - b. Pressure Range (Example): 0 to 30 psig (0 to 200 kPa).
2. Letter size shall be a minimum of [0.25 inch (6 mm)] <Insert dimension> high.
3. Tag shall consist of white lettering on blue background.
4. Tag shall be engraved phenolic consisting of three layers of rigid laminate. Top and bottom layers are color-coded blue with contrasting white center exposed by engraving through outer layer.
5. Include tag with a brass grommet, chain and S-hook.

B. Control Equipment, Instruments, and Control Devices:

1. Engraved tag bearing unique identification.
 - a. Include instruments with unique identification identified by equipment being controlled or monitored, followed by point identification.
2. Letter size shall be as follows:
 - a. Operator Workstations: Minimum of [0.5 inch (13 mm)] <Insert dimension> high.
 - b. Printers: Minimum of [0.5 inch (13 mm)] <Insert dimension> high.

- c. DDC Controllers: Minimum of [0.5 inch (13 mm)] <Insert dimension> high.
 - d. Gateways: Minimum of [0.5 inch (13 mm)] <Insert dimension> high.
 - e. Repeaters: Minimum of [0.5 inch (13 mm)] <Insert dimension> high.
 - f. Enclosures: Minimum of [0.5 inch (13 mm)] <Insert dimension> high.
 - g. Electrical Power Devices: Minimum of [0.25 inch (6 mm)] <Insert dimension> high.
 - h. UPS units: Minimum of [0.5 inch (13 mm)] <Insert dimension> high.
 - i. Accessories: Minimum of [0.25 inch (6 mm)] <Insert dimension> high.
 - j. Instruments: Minimum of [0.25 inch (6 mm)] <Insert dimension> high.
 - k. Control Damper and Valve Actuators: Minimum of [0.25 inch (6 mm)] <Insert dimension> high.
- 3. Tag shall consist of white lettering on black background.
 - 4. Tag shall be engraved phenolic consisting of three layers of rigid laminate. Top and bottom layers are color-coded black with contrasting white center exposed by engraving through outer layer.
 - 5. Tag shall be fastened with drive pins.
 - 6. Instruments, control devices and actuators with Project-specific identification tags having unique identification numbers following requirements indicated and provided by original manufacturer do not require an additional tag.
- C. Valve Tags:
- 1. Brass tags and brass chains attached to valve.
 - 2. Tags shall be at least [1.5 inches (38 mm)] <Insert dimension> in diameter.
 - 3. Include tag with unique valve identification indicating control influence such as flow, level, pressure, or temperature; followed by location of valve, and followed by three-digit sequential number. For example: TV-1.001.
 - 4. Valves with Project-specific identification tags having unique identification numbers following requirements indicated and provided by original manufacturer do not require an additional tag.
- D. Raceway and Boxes:
- 1. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - 2. Paint cover plates on junction boxes and conduit same color as the tape banding for conduits. After painting, label cover plate "HVAC Controls," using an engraved phenolic tag.
 - 3. For raceways housing pneumatic tubing, add a phenolic tag labeled "HVAC Instrument Air Tubing."
 - 4. For raceways housing air signal tubing, add a phenolic tag labeled "HVAC Air Signal Tubing."
- E. Equipment Warning Labels:
- 1. Acrylic label with pressure-sensitive adhesive back and peel-off protective jacket.
 - 2. Lettering size shall be at least 14-point type with white lettering on red background.

3. Warning label shall read "CAUTION-Equipment operated under remote automatic control and may start or stop at any time without warning. Switch electric power disconnecting means to OFF position before servicing."
4. Lettering shall be enclosed in a white line border. Edge of label shall extend at least [0.25 inch (6 mm)] <Insert dimension>beyond white border.

2.22 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Product(s) [and] [material(s)] will be considered defective if [it does] [they do] not pass tests and inspections.
- B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 1. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates.
- B. Examine roughing-in for products to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
 1. Examine roughing-in for instruments installed in piping to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
 2. Examine roughing-in for instruments installed in duct systems to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
- C. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and ceilings for suitable conditions where product will be installed.
- D. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 DDC SYSTEM INTERFACE WITH OTHER SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT

- A. Communication Interface to Equipment with Integral Controls:
 1. DDC system shall have communication interface with equipment having integral controls and having a communication interface for remote monitoring or control.
 2. Equipment to Be Connected:
 - a. Domestic water booster pumps specified in Section 221123.13 "Domestic-Water Packaged Booster Pumps."

- b. Air-terminal units specified in Section 233600 "Air Terminal Units."
- c. Kitchen hoods specified in Section 233813 "Commercial-Kitchen Hoods."
- d. Boilers specified in Section 235213 "Electric Boilers."
- e. Boilers specified in Section 235216 "Condensing Boilers."
- f. Boilers specified in Section 235223 "Cast-Iron Boilers."
- g. Boilers specified in Section 235233 "Water-Tube Boilers."
- h. Boilers specified in Section 235239 "Fire-Tube Boilers."
- i. Feedwater equipment specified in Section 235313 "Boiler Feedwater Pumps."
- j. Deaerators specified in Section 235316 "Deaerators."
- k. Chillers specified in Section 236413.13 "Direct-Fired Absorption Water Chillers."
- l. Chillers specified in Section 236413.16 "Indirect-Fired Absorption Water Chillers."
- m. Chillers specified in Section 236416 "Centrifugal Water Chillers."
- n. Chillers specified in Section 236423.13 "Air-Cooled, Scroll Water Chillers."
- o. Chillers specified in Section 236423.16 "Water-Cooled, Scroll Water Chillers."
- p. Chillers specified in Section 236426.13 "Air-Cooled, Rotary-Screw Water Chillers."
- q. Chillers specified in Section 236426.16 "Water-Cooled, Rotary-Screw Water Chillers."
- r. Cooling towers specified in Section 236513.13 "Open-Circuit, Forced-Draft Cooling Towers."
- s. Cooling towers specified in Section 236513.16 "Closed-Circuit, Forced-Draft Cooling Towers."
- t. Cooling towers specified in Section 236514.13 "Open-Circuit, Induced-Draft, Counterflow Cooling Towers."
- u. Cooling towers specified in Section 236514.14 "Open-Circuit, Induced-Draft, Crossflow Cooling Towers."
- v. Cooling towers specified in Section 236514.16 "Closed-Circuit, Induced-Draft, Counterflow Cooling Towers."
- w. Cooling towers specified in Section 236514.17 "Closed-Circuit, Induced-Draft, Combined-Flow Cooling Towers."
- x. Heat wheels and heat exchangers specified in Section 237223 "Air-to-Air Energy Recovery Equipment."
- y. Air-handling units specified in Section 237313 "Modular Indoor Central-Station Air-Handling Units."
- z. Roof-top units specified in Section 237413 "Packaged, Outdoor, Central-Station Air-Handling Units."
- aa. Dedicated outdoor-air units specified in Section 237433 "Dedicated Outdoor-Air Units."
- bb. Packaged terminal air-conditioners specified in Section 238113.11 "Packaged Terminal Air-Conditioners, Through-Wall Units."
- cc. Packaged terminal air-conditioners specified in Section 238113.12 "Packaged Terminal Air-Conditioners, Freestanding Units."
- dd. Packaged terminal air-conditioners specified in Section 238113.13 "Packaged Terminal Air-Conditioners, Outdoor, Wall-Mounted Units."
- ee. Computer-room air-conditioning units specified in Section 238123.11 "Small-Capacity (6 Tons (21 kW) and Smaller), Computer-Room Air-Conditioners, Floor Mounted Units."

- ff. Computer-room air-conditioning units specified in Section 238123.12 "Large-Capacity (7 Tons (25 kW) and Larger), Computer-Room Air-Conditioners, Floor Mounted Units."
- gg. Computer-room air-conditioning units specified in Section 238123.13 "Computer-Room Air Conditioners, Ceiling-Mounted Units."
- hh. Computer-room air-conditioning units specified in Section 238123.14 "Computer-Room Air Conditioners, Console Units."
- ii. Computer-room, rack-mounted cooling equipment specified in Section 238123.18 "Computer-Room, Rack-Cooling Equipment."
- jj. Fan-coil units specified in Section 238219 "Fan Coil Units."
- kk. Unit ventilators specified in Section 238223 "Unit Ventilators."
- ll. Wetted-element humidifiers specified in Section 238413.16 "Wetted-Element Humidifiers."
- mm. Atomizing humidifiers specified in Section 238413.19 "Atomizing Humidifiers."
- nn. Direct-steam-injection humidifiers specified in Section 238413.23 "Direct-Steam-Injection Humidifiers."
- oo. Self-contained humidifiers specified in Section 238413.29 "Self-Contained Steam Humidifiers."
- pp. Heat exchanger humidifiers specified in Section 238413.36 "Heat Exchanger Humidifiers."
- qq. Dehumidification units specified in Section 238416 "Mechanical Dehumidification Units."
- rr. Switchboards specified in Section 262300 "Low-Voltage Switchgear."
- ss. Motor-control centers specified in Section 262419 "Motor-Control Centers."
- tt. Variable-frequency controllers specified in Section 262923 "Variable-Frequency Motor Controllers."
- uu. Diesel emergency engine generators specified in Section 263213.1 "Diesel Emergency Engine Generators."
- vv. Diesel engine generators specified in Section 263213.14 "Diesel Engine Generators."
- ww. Gaseous emergency engine generators specified in Section 263213.16 "Gaseous Emergency Engine Generators."
- xx. Gaseous engine generators specified in Section 263213.17 "Gaseous Engine Generators."
- yy. Bi-fuel emergency engine generators specified in Section 263213.19 "Bi-Fuel Emergency Engine Generators."
- zz. Bi-fuel engine generators specified in Section 263213.20 "Bi-Fuel Engine Generators."
- aaa. UPS specified in Section 263353 "Static Uninterruptible Power Supply."
- bbb. Refrigerant monitoring.
- ccc. **<Insert equipment and Section number and title>.**

B. Communication Interface to Other Building Systems:

1. DDC system shall have a communication interface with systems having a communication interface.
2. Systems to Be Connected:

- a. Elevators specified in Section 142100 "Electric Traction Elevators."
- b. Elevators specified in Section 142113 "Electric Traction Freight Elevators."
- c. Elevators specified in Section 142400 "Hydraulic Elevators."
- d. Elevators specified in Section 142413 "Hydraulic Freight Elevators."
- e. Escalators specified in Section 143100 "Escalators."
- f. Automated water treatment systems specified in Section 232500 "HVAC Water Treatment."
- g. Automated water treatment systems specified in Section 232516 "Water Treatment for Open-Loop Hydronic Systems."
- h. Automated water treatment systems specified in Section 232519 "Water Treatment for Steam System Feedwater."
- i. Power monitoring specified in Section 260913 "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
- j. Lighting controls specified in Section 260926 "Lighting Control Panelboards."
- k. Lighting controls specified in Section 260943.16 "Addressable-Luminaire Lighting Controls."
- l. Lighting controls specified in Section 260943.23 "Relay-Based Lighting Controls."
- m. Fire-alarm system specified in Section 284621.11 "Addressable Fire-Alarm Systems."
- n. Fire-alarm system specified in Section 284621.13 "Conventional Fire-Alarm Systems."
- o. Access controls specified in Section 281300 "Access Control System Software and Database Management."
- p. Intrusion detection specified in Section 283100 "Intrusion Detection."
- q. Perimeter security specified in Section 283121 "Area and Perimeter Intrusion Detection."
- r. **<Insert system and Section number and title>.**

3.3 CONTROL DEVICES FOR INSTALLATION BY INSTALLERS

- A. Deliver selected control devices, specified in indicated HVAC instrumentation and control device Sections, to identified equipment and systems manufacturers for factory installation and to identified installers for field installation.
- B. Deliver the following to duct fabricator and Installer for installation in ductwork. Include installation instructions to Installer and supervise installation for compliance with requirements.
 - 1. DDC control dampers, which are specified in Section 230923.12 "DDC Control Dampers."
 - 2. Airflow sensors and switches, which are specified in Section 230923.14 "Flow Instruments."
 - 3. Pressure sensors, which are specified in Section 230923.23 "Pressure Instruments."
 - 4. **<Insert additional control devices>.**
- C. Deliver the following to plumbing and HVAC piping installers for installation in piping. Include installation instructions to Installer and supervise installation for compliance with requirements.
 - 1. DDC control valves, which are specified in Section 230923.11 "Control Valves."
 - 2. Pipe-mounted flow meters, which are specified in Section 230923.14 "Flow Instruments."

3. Pipe-mounted sensors, switches and transmitters. Flow meters are specified in Section 230923.14 "Flow Instruments." Liquid[**and steam**] temperature sensors, switches, and transmitters are specified in Section 230923.27 "Temperature Instruments."
4. Tank-mounted sensors, switches and transmitters. Pressure sensors, switches, and transmitters are specified in Section 230923.23 "Pressure Instruments." Liquid[**and steam**] temperature sensors, switches, and transmitters are specified in Section 230923.27 "Temperature Instruments."
5. Pipe- and tank-mounted thermowells. Liquid[**and steam**] thermowells are specified in Section 230923.27 "Temperature Instruments."
6. **<Insert additional control devices>.**

3.4 CONTROL DEVICES FOR EQUIPMENT MANUFACTURER FACTORY INSTALLATION

- A. Deliver the following to air-handling unit manufacturer for factory installation. Include installation instructions to air-handling unit manufacturer[**and supervise installation for compliance with requirements**].
 1. **[Programmable application] [or] [application-specific]** controller.
 2. Unit-mounted DDC control dampers and actuators, which are specified in Section 230923.12 "Control Dampers."
 3. Unit-mounted airflow sensors, switches and transmitters, which are specified in Section 230923.14 "Flow Instruments."
 4. Unit-mounted gas sensors and transmitters, which are specified in Section 230923.16 "Gas Instruments."
 5. Unit-mounted leak-detection switches, which are specified in Section 230923.18 "Leak-Detection Instruments."
 6. Unit-mounted speed sensors, switches and transmitters, which are specified in Section 230923.24 "DDC Speed Instruments."
 7. Unit-mounted pressure sensors, switches and transmitters, which are specified in Section 230923.23 "Pressure Instruments."
 8. Unit-mounted temperature sensors, switches and transmitters. Air-temperature sensors, switches, and transmitters are specified in Section 230923.27 "Temperature Instruments."
 9. Relays.
 10. **<Insert additional control devices>.**
- B. Deliver the following to terminal unit manufacturer for factory installation. Include installation instructions to terminal unit manufacturer.
 1. **[Programmable application] [or] [application-specific]** controller.
 2. Electric damper actuator. Dampers actuators are specified in Section 230923.12 "Control Dampers."
 3. Unit-mounted flow and pressure sensors, transmitters and transducers. Flow sensors, transmitters, and transducers are specified in Section 230923.14 "Flow Instruments." Pressure sensors, switches, and transmitters are specified in Section 230923.23 "Pressure Instruments."

4. Unit-mounted temperature sensors. Air-temperature sensors, switches, and transmitters are specified in Section 230923.27 "Temperature Instruments."
 5. Relays.
 6. **<Insert additional control devices>.**
- C. Deliver the following to fan-coil unit manufacturer for factory installation. Include installation instructions to fan-coil unit manufacturer.
1. **[Programmable application] [or] [application-specific]** controller.
 2. Unit-mounted temperature sensors. Air-temperature sensors, switches, and transmitters are specified in Section 230923.27 "Temperature Instruments."
 3. Flow and pressure switches. Air and liquid flow sensors, transmitters, and transducers are specified in Section 230923.14 "Flow Instruments." Pressure sensors, switches, and transmitters are specified in Section 230923.23 "Pressure Instruments."
 4. Leak-detection switches, which are specified in Section 230923.18 "Leak-Detection Instruments."
 5. Relays.
 6. **<Insert additional control devices>.**

3.5 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install products to satisfy more stringent of all requirements indicated.
- B. Install products level, plumb, parallel, and perpendicular with building construction.
- C. Support products, tubing, piping wiring and raceways. Brace products to prevent lateral movement and sway or a break in attachment when subjected to a **<Insert value>** force.
- D. If codes and referenced standards are more stringent than requirements indicated, comply with requirements in codes and referenced standards.
- E. Fabricate openings and install sleeves in ceilings, floors, roof, and walls required by installation of products. Before proceeding with drilling, punching, and cutting, check for concealed work to avoid damage. Patch, flash, grout, seal, and refinish openings to match adjacent condition.
- F. Firestop Penetrations Made in Fire-Rated Assemblies: Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."
- G. Seal penetrations made in acoustically rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- H. Welding Requirements:
 1. Restrict welding and burning to supports and bracing.
 2. No equipment shall be cut or welded without approval. Welding or cutting will not be approved if there is risk of damage to adjacent Work.
 3. Welding, where approved, shall be by inert-gas electric arc process and shall be performed by qualified welders according to applicable welding codes.

4. If requested on-site, show satisfactory evidence of welder certificates indicating ability to perform welding work intended.

I. Fastening Hardware:

1. Stillson wrenches, pliers, and other tools that damage surfaces of rods, nuts, and other parts are prohibited for work of assembling and tightening fasteners.
2. Tighten bolts and nuts firmly and uniformly. Do not overstress threads by excessive force or by oversized wrenches.
3. Lubricate threads of bolts, nuts and screws with graphite and oil before assembly.

- J. If product locations are not indicated, install products in locations that are accessible and that will permit service and maintenance from floor, equipment platforms, or catwalks without removal of permanently installed furniture and equipment.

K. Corrosive Environments:

1. Avoid or limit use of materials in corrosive airstreams and environments, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Laboratory exhaust-air streams.
 - b. Process exhaust-air streams.
2. When conduit is in contact with a corrosive airstream and environment, use Type 316 stainless-steel conduit and fittings or conduit and fittings that are coated with a corrosive-resistant coating that is suitable for environment. Comply with requirements for installation of raceways and boxes specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
3. Where instruments are located in a corrosive airstream and are not corrosive resistant from manufacturer, field install products in NEMA 250, Type 4X enclosure constructed of Type 316L stainless steel.

3.6 OPERATOR WORKSTATION INSTALLATION

A. Desktop Workstations Installation:

1. Install workstation(s) at location(s) directed by Owner.
2. Install multiple-receptacle power strip with cord for use in connecting multiple workstation components to a single duplex electrical power receptacle.
3. Install software on workstation(s) and verify software functions properly.
4. Develop Project-specific graphics, trends, reports, logs and historical database.
5. Power **[each]** workstation through a **[dedicated]** UPS unit. Locate UPS adjacent to workstation.

B. Portable Workstations Installation:

1. Turn over portable workstations to Owner at Substantial Completion.
2. Install software on workstation(s) and verify software functions properly.

C. Color Graphics Application:

1. Use system schematics indicated as starting point to create graphics.
2. Develop Project-specific library of symbols for representing system equipment and products.
3. Incorporate digital images of Project-completed installation into graphics where beneficial to enhance effect.
4. Submit sketch of graphic layout with description of all text for each graphic for Owner's[**and Architect's**] review before creating graphic using graphics software.
5. Seek Owner input in graphics development once using graphics software.
6. Final editing shall be done on-site with Owner's[**and Architect's**] review and feedback.
7. Refine graphics as necessary for Owner acceptance.
8. On receiving Owner acceptance, print a hard copy for inclusion in operation and maintenance manual. Prepare a scanned copy PDF file of each graphic and include with softcopy of DDC system operation and maintenance manual.

3.7 POT INSTALLATION

- A. Install [one] [two] <Insert quantity> portable operator terminal(s).
- B. Turn over POTs to Owner at Substantial Completion.
- C. Install software on each POT and verify that software functions properly.

3.8 PRINTER INSTALLATION

- A. Provide the following printer(s) at location(s) directed by Owner:
 1. Color Inkjet: Quantity, [one] [one per desktop workstation] <Insert quantity>.
 2. Dot Matrix: Quantity, [one] [one per desktop workstation] <Insert quantity>.
- B. Install printer software on workstations and verify that software functions properly.

3.9 GATEWAY INSTALLATION

- A. Install gateways if required for DDC system communication interface requirements indicated.
 1. Install gateway(s) required to suit indicated requirements.
 - a. <Insert requirements>.
- B. Test gateway to verify that communication interface functions properly.

3.10 ROUTER INSTALLATION

- A. Install routers if required for DDC system communication interface requirements indicated.

1. Install router(s) required to suit indicated requirements.

- a. <Insert requirements>.

- B. Test router to verify that communication interface functions properly.

3.11 CONTROLLER INSTALLATION

- A. Install controllers in enclosures to comply with indicated requirements.

- B. Connect controllers to field power supply[**and to UPS units where indicated**].

- C. Install controller with latest version of applicable software and configure to execute requirements indicated.

- D. Test and adjust controllers to verify operation of connected I/O to achieve performance indicated requirements while executing sequences of operation.

- E. Installation of Network Controllers:

1. Quantity and location of network controllers shall be determined by DDC system manufacturer to satisfy requirements indicated.
 2. Install controllers in a protected location that is easily accessible by operators.
 3. Top of controller shall be within [72 inches (1800 mm)] [84 inches (2100 mm)] <Insert dimension> of finished floor.

- F. Installation of Programmable Application Controllers:

1. Quantity and location of programmable application controllers shall be determined by DDC system manufacturer to satisfy requirements indicated.
 2. Install controllers in a protected location that is easily accessible by operators.
 3. Top of controller shall be within [72 inches (1800 mm)] [84 inches (2100 mm)] <Insert dimension> of finished floor.

- G. Application-Specific Controllers:

1. Quantity and location of application-specific controllers shall be determined by DDC system manufacturer to satisfy requirements indicated.
 2. For controllers not mounted directly on equipment being controlled, install controllers in a protected location that is easily accessible by operators.

3.12 ENCLOSURES INSTALLATION

- A. Install the following items in enclosures, to comply with indicated requirements:

1. Gateways.
 2. Routers.
 3. Controllers.

4. Electrical power devices.
5. UPS units.
6. Relays.
7. Accessories.
8. Instruments.
9. Actuators
10. **<Insert devices>**.

B. Attach wall-mounted enclosures to wall using the following types of steel struts:

1. For NEMA 250, **[Type 1] <Insert type>** Enclosures: Use **[painted steel] [galvanized-steel] [corrosion-resistant-coated steel]** strut and hardware.
2. For NEMA 250, **[Type 4] [Type 4X] <Insert type>** Enclosures and Enclosures Located Outdoors: Use stainless-steel strut and hardware.
3. Install plastic caps on exposed cut edges of strut.

C. Align **[top] [or] [bottom]** of adjacent enclosures **[of like size]**.

D. Install floor-mounted enclosures located **[in mechanical equipment rooms]** on concrete housekeeping pads. Attach enclosure legs using **[galvanized-] [or] [stainless-]** steel anchors.

E. Install continuous and fully accessible wireways to connect conduit, wire, and cable to multiple adjacent enclosures. Wireway used for application shall have protection equal to NEMA 250 rating of connected enclosures.

3.13 ELECTRIC POWER CONNECTIONS

A. Connect electrical power to DDC system products requiring electrical power connections.

B. Design of electrical power to products not indicated with electric power is delegated to DDC system provider and installing trade. Work shall comply with NFPA 70 and other requirements indicated.

C. Comply with requirements in Section 262816 "Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers" for electrical power circuit breakers.

D. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for electrical power conductors and cables.

E. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for electrical power raceways and boxes.

3.14 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" for identification products and installation.

- B. Install **[self-adhesive labels] [laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs]** with unique identification on face for each of the following:
 - 1. Operator workstation.
 - 2. Printer.
 - 3. Gateway.
 - 4. Router.
 - 5. DDC controller.
 - 6. Enclosure.
 - 7. Electrical power device.
 - 8. UPS unit.
 - 9. Accessory.
- C. Install unique instrument identification on face of each instrument connected to a DDC controller.
- D. Install unique identification on face of each control **[damper] [and] [valve]** actuator connected to a DDC controller.
- E. Where product is installed above accessible tile ceiling, also install matching identification on face of ceiling grid located directly below.
- F. Where product is installed above an inaccessible ceiling, also install identification on face of access door directly below.
- G. Warning Labels and Signs:
 - 1. Shall be permanently attached to equipment that can be automatically started by DDC control system.
 - 2. Shall be located in highly visible location near power service entry points.

3.15 NETWORK INSTALLATION

- A. Install balanced twisted pair cable when connecting between the following network devices **[located in same building]**:
 - 1. Operator workstations.
 - 2. Operator workstations and network controllers.
 - 3. Network controllers.
 - 4. **<Insert network device>**.
- B. Install balanced twisted pair cable when connecting between the following:
 - 1. Gateways.
 - 2. Gateways and network controllers or programmable application controllers.
 - 3. Routers.
 - 4. Routers and network controllers or programmable application controllers.
 - 5. Network controllers and programmable application controllers.

6. Programmable application controllers.
7. Programmable application controllers and application-specific controllers.
8. Application-specific controllers.
9. **<Insert network device>.**

C. Install cable in continuous raceway.

1. Where indicated on Drawings, cable trays may be used for copper cable in lieu of conduit.

3.16 NETWORK NAMING AND NUMBERING

A. Coordinate with Owner and provide unique naming and addressing for networks and devices.

B. ASHRAE 135 Networks:

1. MAC Address:

- a. Every network device shall have an assigned and documented MAC address unique to its network.
- b. Ethernet Networks: Document MAC address assigned at its creation.
- c. ARCNET or MS/TP networks: Assign from 00 to 64.

2. Network Numbering:

- a. Assign unique numbers to each new network.
- b. Provide ability for changing network number through device switches or operator interface.
- c. DDC system, with all possible connected LANs, can contain up to 65,534 unique networks.

3. Device Object Identifier Property Number:

- a. Assign unique device object identifier property numbers or device instances for each device network.
- b. Provide for future modification of device instance number by device switches or operator interface.
- c. LAN shall support up to 4,194,302 unique devices.

4. Device Object Name Property Text:

- a. Device object name property field shall support 32 minimum printable characters.
- b. Assign unique device "Object Name" property names with plain-English descriptive names for each device.

- 1) Example 1: Device object name for device controlling boiler plant at Building 1000 would be "HW System B1000."

- 2) Example 2: Device object name for a VAV terminal unit controller could be "VAV unit 102".
5. Object Name Property Text for Other Than Device Objects:
 - a. Object name property field shall support 32 minimum printable characters.
 - b. Assign object name properties with plain-English names descriptive of application.
 - 1) Example 1: "Zone 1 Temperature."
 - 2) Example 2 "Fan Start and Stop."
 6. Object Identifier Property Number for Other Than Device Objects:
 - a. Assign object identifier property numbers according to **[Drawings]** **[or]** **[tables]** indicated.
 - b. If not indicated, object identifier property numbers may be assigned at Installer's discretion but must be approved by Owner in advance, be documented and be unique for like object types within device.

3.17 PIPING AND TUBING INSTALLATION

A. Above-Grade Pneumatic and Air Signal Piping and Tubing Installation:

1. Material Application:
 - a. Install copper tubing, except as follows:
 - 1) Tubing Exposed to View: Polyethylene tubing installed in raceways may be used in lieu of copper tubing.
 - 2) Concealed Tubing: Polyethylene tubing may be used in lieu of copper tubing when **[concealed behind accessible ceilings]** **[and]** **[concealed in walls and connecting wall-mounted instruments with recessed connections]**.
 - b. Install copper tubing**[, unless other accessible materials are indicated,]** for air signals to instruments including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1) Sensors.
 - 2) Switches.
 - 3) Transmitters.
 - 4) **<Insert instrument>**.
 - c. Install drawn-temper copper tubing, except within **36 inches (900 mm)** of device terminations tubing shall be annealed-tempered copper tubing.
 - d. Install compression fittings to connect copper tubing to instruments, control devices, and accessories.
 - e. Install **[barbed]** **[or]** **[compression]** fittings to connect polyethylene tubing to instruments, control devices, and accessories.

2. Routing:

- a. Do not expose tubing in finished spaces, such as spaces with ceilings; occupied spaces, offices, and conference rooms, unless expressly approved in writing by Architect. Tubing may be exposed in areas without ceilings.
- b. Where tubing is installed in finished occupied spaces, install the tubing in surface metal raceway with appropriate fittings only where not feasible to conceal in wall, above ceiling or behind architectural enclosures or covers.
- c. Install piping and tubing plumb and parallel to and at right angles with building construction.
- d. Install multiple runs of tubing or piping in equally spaced parallel lines.
- e. Piping and tubing shall not interfere with access to valves, equipment, duct and equipment access doors, or obstruct personnel access and passageways of any kind.
- f. Coordinate with other trades before installation to prevent proposed piping and tubing from interfering with pipe, duct, terminal equipment, light fixtures, conduit and cable tray space. If changes to Shop Drawings are necessary due to field coordination, document changes on record Drawings.
- g. Install vibration loops in copper tubing when connecting to instrument and actuators that vibrate.

3. Support:

- a. According to MSS SP-69, Table 3, except support spacing shall not exceed **60 inches (1500 mm)**.
 - b. Support copper tubing with copper hangers, clips, and tube trays.
 - c. Do not use tape for support or dielectric isolation.
 - d. Install supports at each change in direction and at each branch take off.
 - e. Attached supports to building structure independent of work of other trades. Support from ducts, pipes, cable trays, and conduits is prohibited.
 - f. Attached support from building structure with threaded rods, structural shapes, or channel strut.
 - g. Install and brace supports to carry static load plus a safety margin, which will allow tubing to be serviced.
 - h. Brace supports to prevent lateral movement.
 - i. Paint steel support members that are not galvanized or zinc coated.
 - j. Support polyethylene tubing same as copper tubing.
4. Do not attach piping and tubing to equipment that may be removed frequently for maintenance or that may impart vibration and expansion from temperature change.
 5. Protect exposed tubing in mechanical equipment rooms from mechanical damage within **[76 inches (1800 mm)] [84 inches (2100 mm)] [96 inches (2400 mm)]** <Insert dimension> above floor. Use aluminum channel reversed and secured over tubing to protect tubing from damage.
 6. Joining and Makeup:
 - a. Where joining and mating dissimilar metals where galvanic action could occur, install dielectric isolation.

- b. Install a dirt leg with an isolation valve and threaded plug at each main air, connection to a panel, pneumatic pilot positioner and PRV station.
 - c. Make threaded joints for connecting to instrument equipment with connectors with a compression tubing connector on one end and threaded connection on other end.
 - d. Make tubing bends with a tube-bending tool. Hard bends, wrinkled or flattened bends are unacceptable.
 - e. Install tube fittings according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - f. Do not make tubing connections to a fitting before completing makeup of the connection.
 - g. Align tubing with the fitting. Avoid springing tube into position, as this may result in excessive stress on both tubing and fitting with possible resulting leaks.
 - h. Do not install fittings close to a bend. A length of straight tubing, not deformed by bending, is required for a proper connection.
 - i. Check tubing for correct diameter and wall thickness.
 - j. Tube ends shall be cut square and deburred. Exercise care during cutting to keep tubing round.
 - k. Thread pipe on a threading machine. Ream inner edges of pipe ends, file and grind to remove burrs.
 - l. Wrap pipe threads of fittings on pneumatic lines with a single wrap of PTFE tape.
 - m. Protect piping and tubing from entrance of foreign matter.
7. Conduit in which nonmetallic tubing is installed shall not exceed 50 percent fill. Support conduit according to NFPA 70 unless otherwise indicated.

B. Identify piping and tubing as follows:

1. Every 50 feet (15 m) of straight run.
2. At least once for each branch within 36 inches (900 mm) of main tee.
3. At each change in direction.
4. Within 36 inches (900 mm) of each ceiling, floor, roof and wall penetration.
5. Where exposed to and where concealed from view, including above ceiling plenums, shafts, and chases.
6. At each valve.
7. Mark each instrument tube connection with a number-coded identification. Each unique tube shall have same unique number at instrument connection and termination at opposite end of tube.

C. Isolation Valves Installation:

1. Install valves full size of piping and tubing.
2. Install at the following locations:
 - a. At each branch.
 - b. Before and after each PRV.
 - c. Before and after each air dryer.
 - d. At each control device.
3. Valves shall be located to be readily accessible from floor.

D. Process Tubing Installation:

1. Install process tubing for signal to instruments in liquid and steam systems. Instruments include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Meters.
 - b. Sensors.
 - c. Switches.
 - d. Transmitters.
2. Support tubing according to MSS SP-69, Table 3, but at intervals no less than 60 inches (1500 mm).
3. Install NPS 1/2 (DN 15) process tubing for industrial-grade sensors, transmitters, and switches. Install stainless-steel bushings where required.
4. Make tubing bends with a bending tool. Flattened or wrinkled bends are unacceptable.
5. Support tubing independent of other trades.
6. Route tubing parallel to and at right angles to building construction.
7. Install tubing concealed in areas with ceilings.
8. Install a dirt leg with an isolation valve and threaded plug in drain valve at each connection to a transmitter and switch.
9. Insulate process piping connected to hot water and steam systems for personnel protection if the surface temperature exceeds 120 deg F (49 deg C). Only insulate piping within maintenance personnel reach from floor, platform, or catwalk.
10. Wrap pipe threads of fitting in process tubing with service temperatures below 350 deg F (177 deg C) with a single wrap of PTFE tape.
11. Coat pipe threads of fittings on process tubing in services with temperatures exceeding 350 deg F (177 deg C) with pipe compound before being made up to reduce the possibility of galling.
12. Do not make tubing connections to a fitting before completing makeup of the connection.
13. Check tubing for correct diameter and wall thickness. Cut the tube ends square and deburred. Exercise care during cutting to keep tubing round.
14. Do not install fittings close to a bend. A length of straight tubing, not deformed by bending, is required for a proper connection.
15. Align tubing with fitting when installed. Avoid springing tube into position.
16. Install tubing with extreme care exercised to keep foreign matter out of system. Open tubing ends shall be kept plugged to keep out dust, dirt and moisture.
17. Do not attach tubing to equipment that may be removed frequently for maintenance or may impart vibration and expansion from temperature change.
18. Protect exposed tubing in mechanical equipment rooms from inadvertent mechanical damage within [76 inches (1800 mm)] [84 inches (2100 mm)] [96 inches (2400 mm)] <Insert dimension> above floor. Use aluminum channel reversed and secured over tubing to protect tubing from damage.

E. Isolation Valves Installation:

1. Install valves full size of piping and tubing.
2. Install isolation valves at the following locations:

- a. Process connection.
 - b. Inlet to each instrument including, sensors, transmitters, switches, gages, and other control devices.
3. Locate valves to be readily accessible from floor.

3.18 CONTROL WIRE, CABLE AND RACEWAYS INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Wire and Cable Installation:

1. Comply with installation requirements in Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."
2. Comply with installation requirements in Section 271313 "Communications Copper Backbone Cabling."
3. Comply with installation requirements in Section 271513 "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling."
4. Install cables with protective sheathing that is waterproof and capable of withstanding continuous temperatures of 90 deg C with no measurable effect on physical and electrical properties of cable.
 - a. Provide shielding to prevent interference and distortion from adjacent cables and equipment.
5. Provide strain relief.
6. Terminate wiring in a junction box.
 - a. Clamp cable over jacket in junction box.
 - b. Individual conductors in the stripped section of the cable shall be slack between the clamping point and terminal block.
7. Terminate field wiring and cable not directly connected to instruments and control devices having integral wiring terminals using terminal blocks.
8. Install signal transmission components according to IEEE C2, REA Form 511a, NFPA 70, and as indicated.
9. Use shielded cable to transmitters.
10. Use shielded cable to temperature sensors.
11. Perform continuity and meager testing on wire and cable after installation.

C. Conduit Installation:

1. Comply with Section "260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for control-voltage conductors.
2. Comply with Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems" for balanced twisted pair cabling and optical fiber installation.

3.19 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: **[Owner will engage] [Engage]** a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and installations, including connections.
- C. Perform the following tests and inspections[**with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative**]:
 - 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
 - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
 - 3. Testing of Pneumatic and Air-Signal Tubing:
 - a. Test for leaks and obstructions.
 - b. Disconnect each pipe and tubing line before a test is performed, and blowout dust, dirt, trash, condensate and other foreign materials with compressed air. Use commercially pure compressed air or nitrogen as distributed in gas cylinders. Air from an oil-free compressor with an air dryer is an acceptable alternative for the test.
 - c. After foreign matter is expelled and line is free from obstructions, plug far end of tubing run.
 - d. Connect a pressure source to near end of run with a needle valve between air supply and tubing run.
 - e. Connect a pressure gage accurate to within 0.5 percent of test between the shutoff needle valve and tubing run under test.
 - f. For system pressures above 30 psig (207 kPa), apply a pressure of 1.5 times operating pressure. Record pressure in tubing run every 10 minutes for one hour. Allowable drop in pressure in one-hour period shall not exceed 1 psig (6.9 kPa).
 - g. For system pressures 30 psig (207 kPa) and below, apply a pressure of 2.0 times operating pressure to piping and tubing run. Record pressure in tubing run every 5 minutes for one hour. Allowable drop in pressure in one-hour period shall not exceed 0.5 psig (3.5 kPa).
- D. Testing:
 - 1. Perform preinstallation, in-progress, and final tests, supplemented by additional tests, as necessary.
 - 2. Preinstallation Cable Verification: Verify integrity and serviceability for new cable lengths before installation. This assurance may be provided by using vendor verification documents, testing, or other methods. As a minimum, furnish evidence of verification for cable attenuation and bandwidth parameters.
 - 3. In-Progress Testing: Perform standard tests for correct pair identification and termination during installation to ensure proper installation and cable placement. Perform tests in addition to those specified if there is any reason to question condition of material

furnished and installed. Testing accomplished is to be documented by agency conducting tests. Submit test results for Project record.

4. Final Testing: Perform final test of installed system to demonstrate acceptability as installed. Testing shall be performed according to a test plan supplied by DDC system manufacturer. Defective Work or material shall be corrected and retested. As a minimum, final testing for cable system, including spare cable, shall verify conformance of attenuation, length, and bandwidth parameters with performance indicated.
5. Test Equipment: Use an optical fiber time domain reflectometer for testing of length and optical connectivity.
6. Test Results: Record test results and submit copy of test results for Project record.

3.20 DDC SYSTEM I/O CHECKOUT PROCEDURES

- A. Check installed products before continuity tests, leak tests and calibration.
- B. Check instruments for proper location and accessibility.
- C. Check instruments for proper installation on direction of flow, elevation, orientation, insertion depth, or other applicable considerations that will impact performance.
- D. Check instrument tubing for proper isolation, fittings, slope, dirt legs, drains, material and support.
- E. For pneumatic products, verify that air supply for each product is properly installed.
- F. Control Damper Checkout:
 1. Verify that control dampers are installed correctly for flow direction.
 2. Verify that proper blade alignment, either parallel or opposed, has been provided.
 3. Verify that damper frame attachment is properly secured and sealed.
 4. Verify that damper actuator and linkage attachment is secure.
 5. Verify that actuator wiring is complete, enclosed and connected to correct power source.
 6. Verify that damper blade travel is unobstructed.
- G. Control Valve Checkout:
 1. For pneumatic valves, verify that pressure gages are provided in each air line to valve actuator and positioner.
 2. Verify that control valves are installed correctly for flow direction.
 3. Verify that valve body attachment is properly secured and sealed.
 4. Verify that valve actuator and linkage attachment is secure.
 5. Verify that actuator wiring is complete, enclosed and connected to correct power source.
 6. Verify that valve ball, disc or plug travel is unobstructed.
 7. After piping systems have been tested and put into service, but before insulating and balancing, inspect each valve for leaks. Adjust or replace packing to stop leaks. Replace the valve if leaks persist.
- H. Instrument Checkout:

1. Verify that instrument is correctly installed for location, orientation, direction and operating clearances.
2. Verify that attachment is properly secured and sealed.
3. Verify that conduit connections are properly secured and sealed.
4. Verify that wiring is properly labeled with unique identification, correct type and size and is securely attached to proper terminals.
5. Inspect instrument tag against approved submittal.
6. For instruments with tubing connections, verify that tubing attachment is secure and isolation valves have been provided.
7. For flow instruments, verify that recommended upstream and downstream distances have been maintained.
8. For temperature instruments:
 - a. Verify sensing element type and proper material.
 - b. Verify length and insertion.

3.21 DDC SYSTEM I/O ADJUSTMENT, CALIBRATION AND TESTING:

- A. Calibrate each instrument installed that is not factory calibrated and provided with calibration documentation.
- B. Provide a written description of proposed field procedures and equipment for calibrating each type of instrument. Submit procedures before calibration and adjustment.
- C. For each analog instrument, make a three-point test of calibration for both linearity and accuracy.
- D. Equipment and procedures used for calibration shall comply with instrument manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Provide diagnostic and test equipment for calibration and adjustment.
- F. Field instruments and equipment used to test and calibrate installed instruments shall have accuracy at least twice the instrument accuracy being calibrated. An installed instrument with an accuracy of 1 percent shall be checked by an instrument with an accuracy of 0.5 percent.
- G. Calibrate each instrument according to instrument instruction manual supplied by manufacturer.
- H. If after calibration indicated performance cannot be achieved, replace out-of-tolerance instruments.
- I. Comply with field testing requirements and procedures indicated by ASHRAE's Guideline 11, "Field Testing of HVAC Control Components," in the absence of specific requirements, and to supplement requirements indicated.
- J. Analog Signals:

1. Check analog voltage signals using a precision voltage meter at zero, 50, and 100 percent.
 2. Check analog current signals using a precision current meter at zero, 50, and 100 percent.
 3. Check resistance signals for temperature sensors at zero, 50, and 100 percent of operating span using a precision-resistant source.
- K. Digital Signals:
1. Check digital signals using a jumper wire.
 2. Check digital signals using an ohmmeter to test for contact making or breaking.
- L. Control Dampers:
1. Stroke and adjust control dampers following manufacturer's recommended procedure, from 100 percent open to 100 percent closed and back to 100 percent open.
 2. Stroke control dampers with pilot positioners. Adjust damper and positioner following manufacturer's recommended procedure, so damper is 100 percent closed, 50 percent closed and 100 percent open at proper air pressure.
 3. Check and document open and close cycle times for applications with a cycle time less than 30 seconds.
 4. For control dampers equipped with positive position indication, check feedback signal at multiple positions to confirm proper position indication.
- M. Control Valves:
1. Stroke and adjust control valves following manufacturer's recommended procedure, from 100 percent open to 100 percent closed and back to 100 percent open.
 2. Stroke control valves with pilot positioners. Adjust valve and positioner following manufacturer's recommended procedure, so valve is 100 percent closed, 50 percent closed and 100 percent open at proper air pressures.
 3. Check and document open and close cycle times for applications with a cycle time less than 30 seconds.
 4. For control valves equipped with positive position indication, check feedback signal at multiple positions to confirm proper position indication.
- N. Meters: Check sensors at zero, 50, and 100 percent of Project design values.
- O. Sensors: Check sensors at zero, 50, and 100 percent of Project design values.
- P. Switches: Calibrate switches to make or break contact at set points indicated.
- Q. Transmitters:
1. Check and calibrate transmitters at zero, 50, and 100 percent of Project design values.
 2. Calibrate resistance temperature transmitters at zero, 50, and 100 percent of span using a precision-resistant source.

3.22 DDC SYSTEM CONTROLLER CHECKOUT

- A. Verify power supply.
 - 1. Verify voltage, phase and hertz.
 - 2. Verify that protection from power surges is installed and functioning.
 - 3. Verify that ground fault protection is installed.
 - 4. If applicable, verify if connected to UPS unit.
 - 5. If applicable, verify if connected to a backup power source.
 - 6. If applicable, verify that power conditioning units, transient voltage suppression and high-frequency noise filter units are installed.
- B. Verify that wire and cabling is properly secured to terminals and labeled with unique identification.
- C. Verify that spare I/O capacity is provided.

3.23 DDC CONTROLLER I/O CONTROL LOOP TESTS

- A. Testing:
 - 1. Test every I/O point connected to DDC controller to verify that safety and operating control set points are as indicated and as required to operate controlled system safely and at optimum performance.
 - 2. Test every I/O point throughout its full operating range.
 - 3. Test every control loop to verify operation is stable and accurate.
 - 4. Adjust control loop proportional, integral and derivative settings to achieve optimum performance while complying with performance requirements indicated. Document testing of each control loop's precision and stability via trend logs.
 - 5. Test and adjust every control loop for proper operation according to sequence of operation.
 - 6. Test software and hardware interlocks for proper operation. Correct deficiencies.
 - 7. Operate each analog point at the following:
 - a. Upper quarter of range.
 - b. Lower quarter of range.
 - c. At midpoint of range.
 - 8. Exercise each binary point.
 - 9. For every I/O point in DDC system, read and record each value at operator workstation, at DDC controller and at field instrument simultaneously. Value displayed at operator workstation, at DDC controller and at field instrument shall match.
 - 10. Prepare and submit a report documenting results for each I/O point in DDC system and include in each I/O point a description of corrective measures and adjustments made to achieve desired results.

3.24 DDC SYSTEM VALIDATION TESTS

- A. Perform validation tests before requesting final review of system. Before beginning testing, first submit Pretest Checklist and Test Plan.
- B. After approval of Test Plan, execute all tests and procedures indicated in plan.
- C. After testing is complete, submit completed test checklist.
- D. Pretest Checklist: Submit the following list with items checked off once verified:
 - 1. Detailed explanation for any items that are not completed or verified.
 - 2. Required mechanical installation work is successfully completed and HVAC equipment is working correctly.
 - 3. HVAC equipment motors operate below full-load amperage ratings.
 - 4. Required DDC system components, wiring, and accessories are installed.
 - 5. Installed DDC system architecture matches approved Drawings.
 - 6. Control electric power circuits operate at proper voltage and are free from faults.
 - 7. Required surge protection is installed.
 - 8. DDC system network communications function properly, including uploading and downloading programming changes.
 - 9. Using BACnet protocol analyzer, verify that communications are error free.
 - 10. Each controller's programming is backed up.
 - 11. Equipment, products, tubing, wiring cable and conduits are properly labeled.
 - 12. All I/O points are programmed into controllers.
 - 13. Testing, adjusting and balancing work affecting controls is complete.
 - 14. Dampers and actuators zero and span adjustments are set properly.
 - 15. Each control damper and actuator goes to failed position on loss of power.
 - 16. Valves and actuators zero and span adjustments are set properly.
 - 17. Each control valve and actuator goes to failed position on loss of power.
 - 18. Meter, sensor and transmitter readings are accurate and calibrated.
 - 19. Control loops are tuned for smooth and stable operation.
 - 20. View trend data where applicable.
 - 21. Each controller works properly in standalone mode.
 - 22. Safety controls and devices function properly.
 - 23. Interfaces with fire-alarm system function properly.
 - 24. Electrical interlocks function properly.
 - 25. Operator workstations and other interfaces are delivered, all system and database software is installed, and graphic are created.
 - 26. Record Drawings are completed.
- E. Test Plan:
 - 1. Prepare and submit a validation test plan including test procedures for performance validation tests.
 - 2. Test plan shall address all specified functions of DDC system and sequences of operation.
 - 3. Explain detailed actions and expected results to demonstrate compliance with requirements indicated.

4. Explain method for simulating necessary conditions of operation used to demonstrate performance.
5. Include a test checklist to be used to check and initial that each test has been successfully completed.
6. Submit test plan documentation [10] [20] <Insert number> business days before start of tests.

F. Validation Test:

1. Verify operating performance of each I/O point in DDC system.
 - a. Verify analog I/O points at operating value.
 - b. Make adjustments to out-of-tolerance I/O points.
 - 1) Identify I/O points for future reference.
 - 2) Simulate abnormal conditions to demonstrate proper function of safety devices.
 - 3) Replace instruments and controllers that cannot maintain performance indicated after adjustments.
2. Simulate conditions to demonstrate proper sequence of control.
3. Readjust settings to design values and observe ability of DDC system to establish desired conditions.
4. After 24 Hours following Initial Validation Test:
 - a. Re-check I/O points that required corrections during initial test.
 - b. Identify I/O points that still require additional correction and make corrections necessary to achieve desired results.
5. After 24 Hours of Second Validation Test:
 - a. Re-check I/O points that required corrections during second test.
 - b. Continue validation testing until I/O point is normal on two consecutive tests.
6. Completely check out, calibrate, and test all connected hardware and software to ensure that DDC system performs according to requirements indicated.
7. After validation testing is complete, prepare and submit a report indicating all I/O points that required correction and how many validation re-tests it took to pass. Identify adjustments made for each test and indicate instruments that were replaced.

G. DDC System Response Time Test:

1. Simulate HLC.
 - a. Heavy load shall be an occurrence of [50] <Insert number> percent of total connected binary COV, one-half of which represent an "alarm" condition, and [50] <Insert number> percent of total connected analog COV, one-half of which represent an "alarm" condition, that are initiated simultaneously on a one-time basis.

2. Initiate 10 successive occurrences of HLC and measure response time to typical alarms and status changes.
3. Measure with a timer having at least 0.1-second resolution and 0.01 percent accuracy.
4. Purpose of test is to demonstrate DDC system, as follows:
 - a. Reaction to COV and alarm conditions during HLC.
 - b. Ability to update DDC system database during HLC.
5. Passing test is contingent on the following:
 - a. Alarm reporting at printer beginning no more than **[two]** **<Insert number>** seconds after the initiation (time zero) of HLC.
 - b. All alarms, both binary and analog, are reported and printed; none are lost.
 - c. Compliance with response times specified.
6. Prepare and submit a report documenting HLC tested and results of test including time stamp and print out of all alarms.

H. DDC System Network Bandwidth Test:

1. Test network bandwidth usage on all DDC system networks to demonstrate bandwidth usage under DDC system normal operating conditions and under simulated HLC.
2. To pass, none of DDC system networks shall use more than 70 percent of available bandwidth under normal and HLC operation.

3.25 FINAL REVIEW

- A. Submit written request to Architect **[and]** **[Construction Manager]** when DDC system is ready for final review. Written request shall state the following:
 1. DDC system has been thoroughly inspected for compliance with contract documents and found to be in full compliance.
 2. DDC system has been calibrated, adjusted and tested and found to comply with requirements of operational stability, accuracy, speed and other performance requirements indicated.
 3. DDC system monitoring and control of HVAC systems results in operation according to sequences of operation indicated.
 4. DDC system is complete and ready for final review.
- B. Review by **[Architect]** **[and]** **[Construction Manager]** shall be made after receipt of written request. A field report shall be issued to document observations and deficiencies.
- C. Take prompt action to remedy deficiencies indicated in field report and submit a second written request when all deficiencies have been corrected. Repeat process until no deficiencies are reported.
- D. Should more than two reviews be required, DDC system manufacturer and Installer shall compensate entity performing review for total costs, labor and expenses, associated with third

and subsequent reviews. Estimated cost of each review shall be submitted and approved by DDC system manufacturer and Installer before making the review.

- E. Prepare and submit closeout submittals when no deficiencies are reported.
- F. A part of DDC system final review shall include a demonstration to parties participating in final review.
 - 1. Provide staff familiar with DDC system installed to demonstrate operation of DDC system during final review.
 - 2. Provide testing equipment to demonstrate accuracy and other performance requirements of DDC system that is requested by reviewers during final review.
 - 3. Demonstration shall include, but not be limited to, the following:
 - a. Accuracy and calibration of [10] [20] <Insert number> I/O points randomly selected by reviewers. If review finds that some I/O points are not properly calibrated and not satisfying performance requirements indicated, additional I/O points may be selected by reviewers until total I/O points being reviewed that satisfy requirements equals quantity indicated.
 - b. HVAC equipment and system hardwired and software safeties and life-safety functions are operating according to sequence of operation. Up to [10] [20] <Insert number> I/O points shall be randomly selected by reviewers. Additional I/O points may be selected by reviewers to discover problems with operation.
 - c. Correct sequence of operation after electrical power interruption and resumption after electrical power is restored for randomly selected HVAC systems.
 - d. Operation of randomly selected dampers and valves in normal-on, normal-off and failed positions.
 - e. Reporting of alarm conditions for randomly selected alarms, including different classes of alarms, to ensure that alarms are properly received by operators and operator workstations.
 - f. Trends, summaries, logs and reports set-up for Project.
 - g. For up to [three] <Insert number> HVAC systems randomly selected by reviewers, use graph trends to show that sequence of operation is executed in correct manner and that HVAC systems operate properly through complete sequence of operation including different modes of operations indicated. Show that control loops are stable and operating at set points and respond to changes in set point of 20 percent or more.
 - h. Software's ability to communicate with controllers, operator workstations, uploading and downloading of control programs.
 - i. Software's ability to edit control programs off-line.
 - j. Data entry to show Project-specific customizing capability including parameter changes.
 - k. Step through penetration tree, display all graphics, demonstrate dynamic update, and direct access to graphics.
 - l. Execution of digital and analog commands in graphic mode.
 - m. Spreadsheet and curve plot software and its integration with database.
 - n. Online user guide and help functions.

- o. Multitasking by showing different operations occurring simultaneously on four quadrants of split screen.
- p. System speed of response compared to requirements indicated.
- q. For Each **[Network] [and] [Programmable Application]** Controller:
 - 1) Memory: Programmed data, parameters, trend and alarm history collected during normal operation is not lost during power failure.
 - 2) Operator Interface: Ability to connect directly to each type of digital controller with a portable operator workstation and mobile device. Show that maintenance personnel interface tools perform as indicated in manufacturer's technical literature.
 - 3) Standalone Ability: Demonstrate that controllers provide stable and reliable standalone operation using default values or other method for values normally read over network.
 - 4) Electric Power: Ability to disconnect any controller safely from its power source.
 - 5) Wiring Labels: Match control drawings.
 - 6) Network Communication: Ability to locate a controller's location on network and communication architecture matches Shop Drawings.
 - 7) Nameplates and Tags: Accurate and permanently attached to control panel doors, instrument, actuators and devices.
- r. For Each Operator Workstation:
 - 1) I/O points lists agree with naming conventions.
 - 2) Graphics are complete.
 - 3) UPS unit, if applicable, operates.
- s. Communications and Interoperability: Demonstrate proper interoperability of data sharing, alarm and event management, trending, scheduling, and device and network management.[**Use ASHRAE 135 protocol analyzer to help identify devices, view network traffic, and verify interoperability.**] Requirements must be met even if only one manufacturer's equipment is installed.
 - 1) Data Presentation: On each operator workstation, demonstrate graphic display capabilities.
 - 2) Reading of Any Property: Demonstrate ability to read and display any used readable object property of any device on network.
 - 3) Set Point and Parameter Modifications: Show ability to modify set points and tuning parameters indicated.[**Modifications are made with messages and write services initiated by an operator using workstation graphics, or by completing a field in a menu with instructional text.**]
 - 4) Peer-to-Peer Data Exchange: Network devices are installed and configured to perform without need for operator intervention to implement Project sequence of operation and to share global data.
 - 5) Alarm and Event Management: Alarms and events are installed and prioritized according to Owner. Demonstrate that time delays and other

- logic are set up to avoid nuisance tripping. Show that operators with sufficient privileges are permitted.
- 6) Schedule Lists: Schedules are configured for start and stop, mode change, occupant overrides, and night setback as defined in sequence of operations.
 - 7) Schedule Display and Modification: Ability to display any schedule with start and stop times for calendar year. Show that all calendar entries and schedules are modifiable from any connected operator workstation by an operator with sufficient privilege.
 - 8) Archival Storage of Data: Data archiving is handled by operator workstation and server and local trend archiving and display is accomplished.
 - 9) Modification of Trend Log Object Parameters: Operator with sufficient privilege can change logged data points, sampling rate, and trend duration.
 - 10) Device and Network Management:
 - a) Display of network device status.
 - b) Display of BACnet Object Information.
 - c) Silencing devices transmitting erroneous data.
 - d) Time synchronization.
 - e) Remote device re-initialization.
 - f) Backup and restore network device programming and master database(s).
 - g) Configuration management of routers.

t. <Insert additional requirements>.

3.26 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within [12] <Insert number> months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to [two] <Insert number> visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

3.27 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service shall include [three] [six] [nine] [12] <Insert number> months' full maintenance by DDC system manufacturer's authorized service representative. Include [monthly] [quarterly] [semiannual] [annual] preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, cleaning, calibration and adjusting as required for proper operation. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.

3.28 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

- A. Technical Support: Beginning at Substantial Completion, service agreement shall include software support for [one] [two] <Insert number> year(s).

- B. Upgrade Service: At Substantial Completion, update software to latest version. Install and program software upgrades that become available within [one] [two] <Insert number> year(s) from date of Substantial Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system and new or revised licenses for using software.

1. Upgrade Notice: At least [30] <Insert number> days to allow Owner to schedule and access system and to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

3.29 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative with complete knowledge of Project-specific system installed to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain DDC system.

- B. Extent of Training:

1. Base extent of training on scope and complexity of DDC system indicated and training requirements indicated. Provide extent of training required to satisfy requirements indicated even if more than minimum training requirements are indicated.
2. Inform Owner of anticipated training requirements if more than minimum training requirements are indicated.
3. Minimum Training Requirements:
 - a. Provide not less than [five] [10] [15] <Insert number> days of training total.
 - b. Stagger training over multiple training classes to accommodate Owner's requirements. All training shall occur before end of warranty period.
 - c. Total days of training shall be broken into not more than [two] [three] [four] <Insert number> separate training classes.
 - d. Each training class shall be not less than [one] [two] [three] <Insert number> consecutive day(s).

- C. Training Schedule:

1. Schedule training with Owner [20] <Insert number> business days before expected Substantial Completion.
2. Schedule training to provide Owner with at least [10] [15] [20] <Insert number> business days of notice in advance of training.
3. Training shall occur within normal business hours at a mutually agreed on time. Unless otherwise agreed to, training shall occur Monday through Friday, except on U.S. Federal holidays, with two morning sessions and two afternoon sessions. Each morning session and afternoon session shall be split in half with [15] [30] <Insert number>-minute break between sessions. Morning and afternoon sessions shall be separated by [30] [60] <Insert number>-minute lunch period. Training, including breaks and excluding lunch period, shall not exceed [eight] <Insert number> hours per day.
4. Provide staggered training schedule as requested by Owner.

- D. Training Attendee List and Sign-in Sheet:

1. Request from Owner in advance of training a proposed attendee list with name, phone number and e-mail address.
 2. Provide a preprinted sign-in sheet for each training session with proposed attendees listed and no fewer than six blank spaces to add additional attendees.
 3. Preprinted sign-in sheet shall include training session number, date and time, instructor name, phone number and e-mail address, and brief description of content to be covered during session. List attendees with columns for name, phone number, e-mail address and a column for attendee signature or initials.
 4. Circulate sign-in sheet at beginning of each session and solicit attendees to sign or initial in applicable location.
 5. At end of each training day, send Owner an e-mail with an attachment of scanned copy (PDF) of circulated sign-in sheet for each session.
- E. Training Attendee Headcount:
1. Plan in advance of training for **[two]** **[three]** **[five]** **<Insert number>** attendees.
 2. Make allowance for Owner to add up to **[one]** **[two]** **<Insert number>** attendee(s) at time of training.
 3. Headcount may vary depending on training content covered in session. Attendee access may be restricted to some training content for purposes of maintaining system security.
- F. Training Attendee Prior Knowledge: For guidance in planning required training and instruction, assume attendees have the following:
1. **[High school]** **[High school and technical school]** **[High school and four-year college]** **<Insert level>** education and degree.
 2. **[Basic]** **[Intermediate]** **[Advanced]** user knowledge of computers and office applications.
 3. **[Basic]** **[Intermediate]** **[Advanced]** knowledge of HVAC systems.
 4. **[Basic]** **[Intermediate]** **[Advanced]** knowledge of DDC systems.
 5. **[Basic]** **[Intermediate]** **[Advanced]** knowledge of DDC system and products installed.
- G. Attendee Training Manuals:
1. Provide each attendee with a color hard copy of all training materials and visual presentations.
 2. Hard-copy materials shall be organized in a three-ring binder with table of contents and individual divider tabs marked for each logical grouping of subject matter. Organize material to provide space for attendees to take handwritten notes within training manuals.
 3. In addition to hard-copy materials included in training manual, provide each binder with a sleeve or pocket that includes a DVD or flash drive with PDF copy of all hard-copy materials.
- H. Instructor Requirements:
1. One or multiple qualified instructors, as required, to provide training.
 2. Instructors shall have not less than **[five]** **<Insert number>** years of providing instructional training on not less than **[five]** **<Insert number>** past projects with similar DDC system scope and complexity to DDC system installed.

I. Organization of Training Sessions:

1. Organize training sessions into logical groupings of technical content and to reflect different levels of operators having access to system. Plan training sessions to accommodate the following three levels of operators:
 - a. Daily operators.
 - b. Advanced operators.
 - c. System managers and administrators.
2. Plan and organize training sessions to group training content to protect DDC system security. Some attendees may be restricted to some training sessions that cover restricted content for purposes of maintaining DDC system security.

J. Training Outline:

1. Submit training outline for Owner review at least [10] <Insert number> business day before scheduling training.
2. Outline shall include a detailed agenda for each training day that is broken down into each of four training sessions that day, training objectives for each training session and synopses for each lesson planned.

K. On-Site Training:

1. Owner will provide conditioned classroom or workspace with ample desks or tables, chairs, power and data connectivity for instructor and each attendee.
2. Instructor shall provide training materials, projector and other audiovisual equipment used in training.
3. Provide as much of training located on-site as deemed feasible and practical by Owner.
4. On-site training shall include regular walk-through tours, as required, to observe each unique product type installed with hands-on review of operation, calibration and service requirements.
5. Operator workstation provided with DDC system shall be used in training. If operator workstation is not indicated, provide a temporary workstation to convey training content.

L. Off-Site Training:

1. Provide conditioned training rooms and workspace with ample tables desks or tables, chairs, power and data connectivity for each attendee.
2. Provide capability to remotely access to Project DDC system for use in training.
3. Provide a workstation for use by each attendee.

M. Training Content for Daily Operators:

1. Basic operation of system.
2. Understanding DDC system architecture and configuration.
3. Understanding each unique product type installed including performance and service requirements for each.

4. Understanding operation of each system and equipment controlled by DDC system including sequences of operation, each unique control algorithm and each unique optimization routine.
5. Operating operator workstations, printers and other peripherals.
6. Logging on and off system.
7. Accessing graphics, reports and alarms.
8. Adjusting and changing set points and time schedules.
9. Recognizing DDC system malfunctions.
10. Understanding content of operation and maintenance manuals including control drawings.
11. Understanding physical location and placement of DDC controllers and I/O hardware.
12. Accessing data from DDC controllers.
13. Operating portable operator workstations.
14. Review of DDC testing results to establish basic understanding of DDC system operating performance and HVAC system limitations as of Substantial Completion.
15. Running each specified report and log.
16. Displaying and demonstrating each data entry to show Project-specific customizing capability. Demonstrating parameter changes.
17. Stepping through graphics penetration tree, displaying all graphics, demonstrating dynamic updating, and direct access to graphics.
18. Executing digital and analog commands in graphic mode.
19. Demonstrating control loop precision and stability via trend logs of I/O for not less than 10 percent of I/O installed.
20. Demonstrating DDC system performance through trend logs and command tracing.
21. Demonstrating scan, update, and alarm responsiveness.
22. Demonstrating spreadsheet and curve plot software, and its integration with database.
23. Demonstrating on-line user guide, and help function and mail facility.
24. Demonstrating multitasking by showing dynamic curve plot, and graphic construction operating simultaneously via split screen.
25. Demonstrating the following for HVAC systems and equipment controlled by DDC system:
 - a. Operation of HVAC equipment in normal-off, -on and failed conditions while observing individual equipment, dampers and valves for correct position under each condition.
 - b. For HVAC equipment with factory-installed software, show that integration into DDC system is able to communicate with DDC controllers or gateways, as applicable.
 - c. Using graphed trends, show that sequence of operation is executed in correct manner, and HVAC systems operate properly through complete sequence of operation including seasonal change, occupied and unoccupied modes, warm-up and cool-down cycles and other modes of operation indicated.
 - d. Hardware interlocks and safeties function properly and DDC system performs correct sequence of operation after electrical power interruption and resumption after power is restored.
 - e. Reporting of alarm conditions for each alarm, and confirm that alarms are received at assigned locations, including operator workstations.

- f. Each control loop responds to set point adjustment and stabilizes within time period indicated.
- g. Sharing of previously graphed trends of all control loops to demonstrate that each control loop is stable and set points are being maintained.

N. Training Content for Advanced Operators:

- 1. Making and changing workstation graphics.
- 2. Creating, deleting and modifying alarms including annunciation and routing.
- 3. Creating, deleting and modifying point trend logs including graphing and printing on an ad-hoc basis and operator-defined time intervals.
- 4. Creating, deleting and modifying reports.
- 5. Creating, deleting and modifying points.
- 6. Creating, deleting and modifying programming including ability to edit control programs off-line.
- 7. Creating, deleting and modifying system graphics and other types of displays.
- 8. Adding DDC controllers and other network communication devices such as gateways and routers.
- 9. Adding operator workstations.
- 10. Performing DDC system checkout and diagnostic procedures.
- 11. Performing DDC controllers operation and maintenance procedures.
- 12. Performing operator workstation operation and maintenance procedures.
- 13. Configuring DDC system hardware including controllers, workstations, communication devices and I/O points.
- 14. Maintaining, calibrating, troubleshooting, diagnosing and repairing hardware.
- 15. Adjusting, calibrating and replacing DDC system components.

O. Training Content for System Managers and Administrators:

- 1. DDC system software maintenance and backups.
- 2. Uploading, downloading and off-line archiving of all DDC system software and databases.
- 3. Interface with Project-specific, third-party operator software.
- 4. Understanding password and security procedures.
- 5. Adding new operators and making modifications to existing operators.
- 6. Operator password assignments and modification.
- 7. Operator authority assignment and modification.
- 8. Workstation data segregation and modification.

P. Video of Training Sessions:

- 1. Provide a digital video and audio recording of each training session. Create a separate recording file for each session.
- 2. Stamp each recording file with training session number, session name and date.
- 3. Provide Owner with **[two]** <Insert number> copies of digital files on DVDs or flash drives for later reference and for use in future training.
- 4. Owner retains right to make additional copies for intended training purposes without having to pay royalties.

END OF SECTION 230923

SECTION 232300

REFRIGERANT PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Refrigerant pipes and fittings.
2. Refrigerant piping valves and specialties.
3. Refrigerants.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of valve, refrigerant piping, and refrigerant piping specialty.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Show piping size and piping layout, including oil traps, double risers, specialties, and pipe and tube sizes to accommodate, as a minimum, equipment provided, elevation difference between compressor and evaporator, and length of piping to ensure proper operation and compliance with warranties of connected equipment.
2. Show interface and spatial relationships between piping and equipment.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For refrigerant valves and piping specialties to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Code for Refrigeration Systems."
- B. Comply with ASME B31.5, "Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant:

1. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 300 psig (2068 kPa).
2. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 535 psig (3689 kPa).

3. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 535 psig (3689 kPa).

2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Copper Tube: **ASTM B 280, Type ACR.**
- B. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.
- C. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.
- D. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M.
- E. Flexible Connectors:
 1. Body: Tin-bronze bellows with woven, flexible, tinned-bronze-wire-reinforced protective jacket.
 2. End Connections: Socket ends.
 3. Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch (20-mm) misalignment in minimum 7-inch- (180-mm-) long assembly.
 4. Working Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 500 psig (3450 kPa).
 5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F (121 deg C).

2.3 VALVES AND SPECIALTIES

- A. Diaphragm Packless Valves:
 1. Body and Bonnet: Forged brass or cast bronze; globe design with straight-through or angle pattern.
 2. Diaphragm: Phosphor bronze and stainless steel with stainless-steel spring.
 3. Operator: Rising stem and hand wheel.
 4. Seat: Nylon.
 5. End Connections: Socket, union, or flanged.
 6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
 7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F (135 deg C).
- B. Packed-Angle Valves:
 1. Body and Bonnet: Forged brass or cast bronze.
 2. Packing: Molded stem, back seating, and replaceable under pressure.
 3. Operator: Rising stem.
 4. Seat: Nonrotating, self-aligning polytetrafluoroethylene.
 5. Seal Cap: Forged-brass or valox hex cap.
 6. End Connections: Socket, union, threaded, or flanged.
 7. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
 8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F (135 deg C).
- C. Check Valves:
 1. Body: Ductile iron, forged brass, or cast bronze; globe pattern.
 2. Bonnet: Bolted ductile iron, forged brass, or cast bronze; or brass hex plug.
 3. Piston: Removable polytetrafluoroethylene seat.
 4. Closing Spring: Stainless steel.

5. Manual Opening Stem: Seal cap, plated-steel stem, and graphite seal.
 6. End Connections: Socket, union, threaded, or flanged.
 7. Maximum Opening Pressure: 0.50 psig (3.4 kPa).
 8. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
 9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F (135 deg C).
- D. Service Valves:
1. Body: Forged brass with brass cap including key end to remove core.
 2. Core: Removable ball-type check valve with stainless-steel spring.
 3. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
 4. End Connections: Copper spring.
 5. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig (3450 kPa).
- E. Solenoid Valves: Comply with AHRI 760 and UL 429; listed and labeled by a National Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL).
1. Body and Bonnet: Plated steel.
 2. Solenoid Tube, Plunger, Closing Spring, and Seat Orifice: Stainless steel.
 3. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
 4. End Connections: Threaded.
 5. Electrical: Molded, watertight coil in NEMA 250 enclosure of type required by location with 1/2-inch (16-GRC) conduit adapter.
 6. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
 7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F (116 deg C).
- F. Safety Relief Valves: Comply with 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
1. Body and Bonnet: Ductile iron and steel, with neoprene O-ring seal.
 2. Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
 3. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
 4. End Connections: Threaded.
 5. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
 6. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F (116 deg C).
- G. Thermostatic Expansion Valves: Comply with AHRI 750.
1. Body, Bonnet, and Seal Cap: Forged brass or steel.
 2. Diaphragm, Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
 3. Packing and Gaskets: Non-asbestos.
 4. Capillary and Bulb: Copper tubing filled with refrigerant charge.
 5. Suction Temperature: 40 deg F (4.4 deg C).
 6. Reverse-flow option (for heat-pump applications).
 7. End Connections: Socket, flare, or threaded union.
 8. Working Pressure Rating: 700 psig (4820 kPa).
- H. Hot-Gas Bypass Valves: Comply with UL 429; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
1. Body, Bonnet, and Seal Cap: Ductile iron or steel.
 2. Diaphragm, Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
 3. Packing and Gaskets: Non-asbestos.
 4. Solenoid Tube, Plunger, Closing Spring, and Seat Orifice: Stainless steel.

5. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
 6. Equalizer: **[Internal]** **[External]**.
 7. Electrical: Molded, watertight coil in NEMA 250 enclosure of type required by location with **1/2-inch (16-GRC)** conduit adapter.
 8. End Connections: Socket.
 9. Throttling Range: Maximum **5 psig (34 kPa)**.
 10. Working Pressure Rating: **500 psig (3450 kPa)**.
 11. Maximum Operating Temperature: **240 deg F (116 deg C)**.
- I. Straight-Type Strainers:
1. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
 2. Screen: 100-mesh stainless steel.
 3. End Connections: Socket or flare.
 4. Working Pressure Rating: **500 psig (3450 kPa)**.
 5. Maximum Operating Temperature: **275 deg F (135 deg C)**.
- J. Angle-Type Strainers:
1. Body: Forged brass or cast bronze.
 2. Drain Plug: Brass hex plug.
 3. Screen: 100-mesh monel.
 4. End Connections: Socket or flare.
 5. Working Pressure Rating: **500 psig (3450 kPa)**.
 6. Maximum Operating Temperature: **275 deg F (135 deg C)**.
- K. Moisture/Liquid Indicators:
1. Body: Forged brass.
 2. Window: Replaceable, clear, fused glass window with indicating element protected by filter screen.
 3. Indicator: Color coded to show moisture content in parts per million (ppm).
 4. Minimum Moisture Indicator Sensitivity: Indicate moisture above 60 ppm.
 5. End Connections: Socket or flare.
 6. Working Pressure Rating: **500 psig (3450 kPa)**.
 7. Maximum Operating Temperature: **240 deg F (116 deg C)**.
- L. Replaceable-Core Filter Dryers: Comply with AHRI 730.
1. Body and Cover: Painted-steel shell with ductile-iron cover, stainless-steel screws, and neoprene gaskets.
 2. Filter Media: 10 micron, pleated with integral end rings; stainless-steel support.
 3. Designed for reverse flow (for heat-pump applications).
 4. End Connections: Socket.
 5. Access Ports: **NPS 1/4 (DN 8)** connections at entering and leaving sides for pressure differential measurement.
 6. Maximum Pressure Loss: **2 psig (14 kPa)**.
 7. Working Pressure Rating: **500 psig (3450 kPa)**.
 8. Maximum Operating Temperature: **240 deg F (116 deg C)**.
- M. Permanent Filter Dryers: Comply with AHRI 730.
1. Body and Cover: Painted-steel shell.

2. Filter Media: 10 micron, pleated with integral end rings; stainless-steel support.
3. Designed for reverse flow (for heat-pump applications).
4. End Connections: Socket.
5. Access Ports: **NPS 1/4 (DN 8)** connections at entering and leaving sides for pressure differential measurement.
6. Maximum Pressure Loss: **2 psig (14 kPa)**.
7. Working Pressure Rating: **500 psig (3450 kPa)**.
8. Maximum Operating Temperature: **240 deg F (116 deg C)**.

2.4 REFRIGERANTS

- A. ASHRAE 34, R-32: difluoromethane.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS FOR REFRIGERANT R-32

- A. Suction Lines: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with **brazed** joints.
- B. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines[, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with **brazed** joints.
- C. Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping: Copper, **Type ACR**], drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with soldered joints.

3.2 VALVE AND SPECIALTY APPLICATIONS

- A. Install **diaphragm packless** valves in suction and discharge lines of compressor.
- B. Install service valves for gage taps at inlet and outlet of hot-gas bypass valves and strainers if they are not an integral part of valves and strainers.
- C. Install a check valve at the compressor discharge and a liquid accumulator at the compressor suction connection.
- D. Except as otherwise indicated, install **diaphragm packless** valves on inlet and outlet side of filter dryers.
- E. Install a full-size, three-valve bypass around filter dryers.
- F. Install solenoid valves upstream from each expansion valve and hot-gas bypass valve. Install solenoid valves in horizontal lines with coil at top.
- G. Install thermostatic expansion valves as close as possible to distributors on evaporators.
 1. Install valve so diaphragm case is warmer than bulb.
 2. Secure bulb to clean, straight, horizontal section of suction line using two bulb straps. Do not mount bulb in a trap or at bottom of the line.

3. If external equalizer lines are required, make connection where it will reflect suction-line pressure at bulb location.
- H. Install safety relief valves where required by 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Pipe safety-relief-valve discharge line to outside according to ASHRAE 15.
- I. Install moisture/liquid indicators in liquid line at the inlet of the thermostatic expansion valve or at the inlet of the evaporator coil capillary tube.
- J. Install strainers upstream from and adjacent to the following unless they are furnished as an integral assembly for the device being protected:
 1. Solenoid valves.
 2. Thermostatic expansion valves.
 3. Hot-gas bypass valves.
 4. Compressor.
- K. Install filter dryers in liquid line between compressor and thermostatic expansion valve.
- L. Install receivers sized to accommodate pump-down charge.
- M. Install flexible connectors at compressors.

3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems; indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings.
- B. Install refrigerant piping according to ASHRAE 15.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping adjacent to machines to allow service and maintenance.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.

- J. Refer to Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC" and Section 230993.11 "Sequence of Operations for HVAC DDC" for solenoid valve controllers, control wiring, and sequence of operation.
 - K. Install piping as short and direct as possible, with a minimum number of joints, elbows, and fittings.
 - L. Arrange piping to allow inspection and service of refrigeration equipment. Install valves and specialties in accessible locations to allow for service and inspection. Install access doors or panels as specified in Section 083113 "Access Doors and Frames" if valves or equipment requiring maintenance is concealed behind finished surfaces.
 - M. Install refrigerant piping in protective conduit where installed belowground.
 - N. Install refrigerant piping in rigid or flexible conduit in locations where exposed to mechanical injury.
 - O. Slope refrigerant piping as follows:
 - 1. Install horizontal hot-gas discharge piping with a uniform slope downward away from compressor.
 - 2. Install horizontal suction lines with a uniform slope downward to compressor.
 - 3. Install traps and double risers to entrain oil in vertical runs.
 - 4. Liquid lines may be installed level.
 - P. When brazing or soldering, remove solenoid-valve coils and sight glasses; also remove valve stems, seats, and packing, and accessible internal parts of refrigerant specialties. Do not apply heat near expansion-valve bulb.
 - Q. Install piping with adequate clearance between pipe and adjacent walls and hangers or between pipes for insulation installation.
 - R. Identify refrigerant piping and valves according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
 - S. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
 - T. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
 - U. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 230518 "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."
- 3.4 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION
- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.

- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," Chapter "Pipe and Tube."
 - 1. Use Type BCuP (copper-phosphorus) alloy for joining copper socket fittings with copper pipe.
 - 2. Use Type BAg (cadmium-free silver) alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.

3.5 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with requirements for pipe hangers and supports specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Install the following pipe attachments:
 - 1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal runs less than 20 feet (6 m) long.
 - 2. Roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal runs 20 feet (6 m) or longer.
 - 3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet (6 m) or longer, supported on a trapeze.
 - 4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
 - 5. Copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
- C. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod diameters:
 - 1. NPS 1/2 (DN 15): Maximum span, 60 inches (1500 mm); minimum rod, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).
 - 2. NPS 5/8 (DN 18): Maximum span, 60 inches (1500 mm); minimum rod, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).
 - 3. NPS 1 (DN 25): Maximum span, 72 inches (1800 mm); minimum rod, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).
 - 4. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32): Maximum span, 96 inches (2400 mm); minimum rod, 3/8 inch (9.5 mm).
 - 5. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40): Maximum span, 96 inches (2400 mm); minimum rod, 3/8 inch (9.5 mm).
 - 6. NPS 2 (DN 50): Maximum span, 96 inches (2400 mm); minimum rod, 3/8 inch (9.5 mm).
 - 7. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): Maximum span, 108 inches (2700 mm); minimum rod, 3/8 inch (9.5 mm).
 - 8. NPS 3 (DN 80): Maximum span, 10 feet (3 m); minimum rod, 3/8 inch (9.5 mm).
 - 9. NPS 4 (DN 100): Maximum span, 12 feet (3.7 m); minimum rod, 1/2 inch (13 mm).
- D. Support multifloor vertical runs at least at each floor.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Comply with ASME B31.5, Chapter VI and ASHRAE 34.

2. Test refrigerant piping, specialties, and receivers. Isolate compressor, condenser, evaporator, and safety devices from test pressure if they are not rated above the test pressure.
3. Test high- and low-pressure side piping of each system separately at not less than the pressures indicated in "Performance Requirements" Article.
 - a. Fill system with nitrogen to the required test pressure.
 - b. System shall maintain test pressure at the manifold gage throughout duration of test.
 - c. Test joints and fittings with electronic leak detector or by brushing a small amount of soap and glycerin solution over joints.
 - d. Remake leaking joints using new materials, and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.

B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.7 SYSTEM CHARGING

A. Charge system using the following procedures:

1. Install core in filter dryers after leak test but before evacuation.
2. Evacuate entire refrigerant system with a vacuum pump to 500 micrometers (67 Pa). If vacuum holds for 12 hours, system is ready for charging.
3. Break vacuum with refrigerant gas, allowing pressure to build up to 2 psig (14 kPa).
4. Charge system with a new filter-dryer core in charging line.

3.8 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust thermostatic expansion valve to obtain proper evaporator superheat.
- B. Adjust high- and low-pressure switch settings to avoid short cycling in response to fluctuating suction pressure.
- C. Adjust set-point temperature of air-conditioning or chilled-water controllers to the system design temperature.
- D. Perform the following adjustments before operating the refrigeration system, according to manufacturer's written instructions:
 1. Open shutoff valves in condenser water circuit.
 2. Verify that compressor oil level is correct.
 3. Open compressor suction and discharge valves.
 4. Open refrigerant valves except bypass valves that are used for other purposes.
 5. Check open compressor-motor alignment and verify lubrication for motors and bearings.
- E. Replace core of replaceable filter dryer after system has been adjusted and after design flow rates and pressures are established.

END OF SECTION 232300

SECTION 233113

METAL DUCTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Rectangular ducts and fittings.
2. Round ducts and fittings.
3. Sheet metal materials.
4. Sealants and gaskets.
5. Hangers and supports.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing requirements for metal ducts.
2. Section 233116 "Nonmetal Ducts" for fibrous-glass ducts, thermoset fiber-reinforced plastic ducts, thermoplastic ducts, PVC ducts, and concrete ducts.
3. Section 233119 "HVAC Casings" for factory- and field-fabricated casings for mechanical equipment.
4. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for dampers, sound-control devices, duct-mounting access doors and panels, turning vanes, and flexible ducts.

1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Duct Design: Duct construction, including sheet metal thicknesses, seam and joint construction, reinforcements, and hangers and supports, shall comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and performance requirements and design criteria indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.
- B. Structural Performance: Duct hangers and supports shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions described in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible".
- C. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ANSI/ASHRAE 62.1.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings:

1. Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.
2. Factory- and shop-fabricated ducts and fittings.
3. Duct layout indicating sizes, configuration, and static-pressure classes.
4. Elevation of top of ducts.
5. Dimensions of main duct runs from building grid lines.
6. Fittings.
7. Reinforcement and spacing.
8. Seam and joint construction.
9. Penetrations through fire-rated and other partitions.
10. Equipment installation based on equipment being used on Project.
11. Locations for duct accessories, including dampers, turning vanes, and access doors and panels.
12. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment and vibration isolation.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
1. Duct installation in congested spaces, indicating coordination with general construction, building components, and other building services. Indicate proposed changes to duct layout.
 2. Suspended ceiling components.
 3. Structural members to which duct will be attached.
 4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
 5. Penetrations of smoke barriers and fire-rated construction.
 6. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:
 - a. Luminaires.
 - b. Air outlets and inlets.
 - c. Speakers.
 - d. Sprinklers.
 - e. Access panels.
 - f. Perimeter moldings.

- B. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."
- B. ASHRAE/IES Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6.4.4 - "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 4, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.2 ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
 - 1. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than [60 Inches (1524 mm)] <Insert dimension> in Diameter: Flanged.
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
 - 1. Fabricate round ducts larger Than 90 inches (2286 mm) in diameter with butt-welded longitudinal seams.

- D. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.3 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
 - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90 (Z275).
 - 2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.
- C. Carbon-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, with oiled, matte finish for exposed ducts.
- D. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 480/A 480M, Type 304 or 316, as indicated in the "Duct Schedule" Article; cold rolled, annealed, sheet. Exposed surface finish shall be No. 2B, No. 2D, No. 3, or No. 4 as indicated in the "Duct Schedule" Article.
- E. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M) Alloy 3003, H14 temper; with mill finish for concealed ducts, and standard, one-side bright finish for duct surfaces exposed to view.
- F. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
 - 1. Where black- and galvanized-steel shapes and plates are used to reinforce aluminum ducts, isolate the different metals with butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM gasket materials.
- G. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch (6-mm) minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches (900 mm) or less; 3/8-inch (10-mm) minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches (900 mm).

2.4 SEALANT AND GASKETS

- A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
- B. Two-Part Tape Sealing System:

1. Tape: Woven cotton fiber impregnated with mineral gypsum and modified acrylic/silicone activator to react exothermically with tape to form hard, durable, airtight seal.
 2. Tape Width: 3 inches (76 mm).
 3. Sealant: Modified styrene acrylic.
 4. Water resistant.
 5. Mold and mildew resistant.
 6. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa), positive and negative.
 7. Service: Indoor and outdoor.
 8. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 93 deg C).
 9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum.
 10. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 11. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:
1. Application Method: Brush on.
 2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
 3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
 4. Water resistant.
 5. Mold and mildew resistant.
 6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
 7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa), positive and negative.
 8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
 9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.
- D. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 920.
1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
 2. Type: S.
 3. Grade: NS.
 4. Class: 25.
 5. Use: O.
 6. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 7. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- E. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.
- F. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:

1. Seal shall provide maximum leakage class of 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg (0.14 L/s per sq. m) and shall be rated for 10-inch wg (2500-Pa) static-pressure class, positive or negative.
2. EPDM O-ring to seal in concave bead in coupling or fitting spigot.
3. Double-lipped, EPDM O-ring seal, mechanically fastened to factory-fabricated couplings and fitting spigots.

2.5 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Cadmium-plated steel rods and nuts.
- B. Hanger Rods for Corrosive Environments: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.
- C. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1 (Table 5-1M), "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."
- D. Steel Cables for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 603.
- E. Steel Cables for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless steel complying with ASTM A 492.
- F. Steel Cable End Connections: Cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.
- G. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.
- H. Trapeze and Riser Supports:
 1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.
 2. Supports for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless-steel shapes and plates.
 3. Supports for Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum or galvanized steel coated with zinc chromate.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install ducts according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install ducts in maximum practical lengths.

- D. Install ducts with fewest possible joints.
- E. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.
- F. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.
- G. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.
- H. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch (25 mm), plus allowance for insulation thickness.
- I. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.
- J. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm).
- K. Where ducts pass through fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls, install fire dampers. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers.
- L. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials. Comply with SMACNA's "IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction," Appendix G, "Duct Cleanliness for New Construction Guidelines."

3.2 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK

- A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.
- B. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system.
- C. Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finish, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds, and treat the welds to remove discoloration caused by welding.
- D. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in the arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.
- E. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.

3.3 DUCT SEALING

- A. Seal ducts for duct static-pressure, seal classes, and leakage classes specified in "Duct Schedule" Article according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- B. Seal ducts at a minimum to the following seal classes according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible":
 - 1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
 - 2. Outdoor, Supply-Air Ducts: Seal Class A.
 - 3. Outdoor, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
 - 4. Outdoor, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.
 - 5. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg (500 Pa) and Lower: Seal Class B.
 - 6. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than 2-Inch wg (500 Pa): Seal Class A.
 - 7. Unconditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
 - 8. Unconditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class B.
 - 9. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg (500 Pa) and Lower: Seal Class C.
 - 10. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than 2-Inch wg (500 Pa): Seal Class B.
 - 11. Conditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class B.
 - 12. Conditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.

3.4 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 5, "Hangers and Supports."
- B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
 - 1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
 - 2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
 - 3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
 - 4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
 - 5. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for seismic restraints.
- C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1 (Table 5-1M), "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches (610 mm) of each elbow and within 48 inches (1200 mm) of each branch intersection.
- D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.

- E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of 16 feet (5 m).
- F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

3.5 CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

3.6 DUCT CLEANING

- A. Clean new duct system(s) before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- B. Use service openings for entry and inspection.
 - 1. Create new openings and install access panels appropriate for duct static-pressure class if required for cleaning access. Provide insulated panels for insulated or lined duct. Patch insulation and liner as recommended by duct liner manufacturer. Comply with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for access panels and doors.
 - 2. Disconnect and reconnect flexible ducts as needed for cleaning and inspection.
 - 3. Remove and reinstall ceiling to gain access during the cleaning process.
- C. Particulate Collection and Odor Control:
 - 1. When venting vacuuming system inside the building, use HEPA filtration with 99.97 percent collection efficiency for 0.3-micron-size (or larger) particles.
 - 2. When venting vacuuming system to outdoors, use filter to collect debris removed from HVAC system, and locate exhaust downwind and away from air intakes and other points of entry into building.
- D. Clean the following components by removing surface contaminants and deposits:
 - 1. Air outlets and inlets (registers, grilles, and diffusers).
 - 2. Supply, return, and exhaust fans including fan housings, plenums (except ceiling supply and return plenums), scrolls, blades or vanes, shafts, baffles, dampers, and drive assemblies.
 - 3. Air-handling unit internal surfaces and components including mixing box, coil section, air wash systems, spray eliminators, condensate drain pans, humidifiers and dehumidifiers, filters and filter sections, and condensate collectors and drains.
 - 4. Coils and related components.
 - 5. Return-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes except in ceiling plenums and mechanical equipment rooms.

6. Supply-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes.
7. Dedicated exhaust and ventilation components and makeup air systems.

E. Mechanical Cleaning Methodology:

1. Clean metal duct systems using mechanical cleaning methods that extract contaminants from within duct systems and remove contaminants from building.
2. Use vacuum-collection devices that are operated continuously during cleaning. Connect vacuum device to downstream end of duct sections so areas being cleaned are under negative pressure.
3. Use mechanical agitation to dislodge debris adhered to interior duct surfaces without damaging integrity of metal ducts, duct liner, or duct accessories.
4. Clean fibrous-glass duct liner with HEPA vacuuming equipment; do not permit duct liner to get wet. Replace fibrous-glass duct liner that is damaged, deteriorated, or delaminated or that has friable material, mold, or fungus growth.
5. Clean coils and coil drain pans according to NADCA 1992. Keep drain pan operational. Rinse coils with clean water to remove latent residues and cleaning materials; comb and straighten fins.
6. Provide drainage and cleanup for wash-down procedures.
7. Antimicrobial Agents and Coatings: Apply EPA-registered antimicrobial agents if fungus is present. Apply antimicrobial agents according to manufacturer's written instructions after removal of surface deposits and debris.

3.7 START UP

- A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

3.8 DUCT SCHEDULE

- A. Duct static pressure classifications shall be a minimum of the higher of either the fan developed static pressure or the scheduled value below.

Category	Connecting	Pressure Class ^{ab}	Seal Class ^a	Leakage Class ^a		Material ^f
				Rect.	Round	
Supply Air	Terminal ^c	2"	A	LC-16	LC-8	G
	AHU ^d	4"	A	LC-8	LC-4	G
	Other	4"	A	LC-8	LC-4	G
Return Air	Terminal ^c	2"	A	LC-16	LC-8	G
	AHU ^d	4"	A	LC-8	LC-4	G
	Other	4"	A	LC-8	LC-4	G
Exhaust Air	Class 1 & 2 ^e	2"	A	LC-16	LC-8	G
	AHU ^d	3"	A	LC-8	LC-4	G
	Kitchen	4"	Welded	LC-8	LC-4	B/S1 ^g
	Moisture	3"	A	LC-8	LC-4	S1
	Class 3 & 4 ^e	6"	A	LC-4	LC-2	S2
	Other	3"	A	LC-8	LC-4	G

Outside Air	Terminal ^c	1"	A	LC-16	LC-8	G
	AHU ^d	3"	A	LC-8	LC-4	G
	Other	3"	A	LC-8	LC-4	G

1. Table Notes:

- a. Duct classifications according to the latest versions of SMACNA.
- b. Pressure class in inches water gauge (" w.g.).
- c. Terminal designation includes ducts connected to fan coil units, furnaces, heat pumps, and terminal units.
- d. "AHU" indicates all air handling equipment including rooftop units, air handlers, dedicated outside air units, energy recovery units, etc., moving primary and secondary air through the building.
- e. Air classifications as defined by ASHRAE 62.1.
 - 1) Ducts connected to fans exhausting Class 1 and 2 air.
 - 2) Ducts connected to fans exhausting laboratory and process Class 3 and 4 air.
- f. Material Designations: G = galvanized sheetmetal, S1 = 304L stainless steel, S2 = 316L stainless steel, A = aluminum, B = black iron.
- g. Exposed to View/Outdoors: Type 304, stainless steel sheet, No. 4 finish. Concealed: carbon-steel sheet.

B. Elbow Configuration:

1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
 - a. Velocity 1000 fpm (5 m/s) or Lower:
 - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
 - 2) Mitered Type RE 4 without vanes.
 - b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm (5 to 7.6 m/s):
 - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio.
 - 2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
 - 3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
 - c. Velocity 1500 fpm (7.6 m/s) or Higher:
 - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
 - 2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
 - 3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."

2. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
 - a. Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
 - b. Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
 - c. Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
3. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "Round Duct Elbows."
 - a. Minimum Radius-to-Diameter Ratio and Elbow Segments: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 3-1, "Mitered Elbows." Elbows with less than 90-degree change of direction have proportionately fewer segments.
 - 1) Velocity 1000 fpm (5 m/s) or Lower: 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and three segments for 90-degree elbow.
 - 2) Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm (5 to 7.6 m/s): 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and four segments for 90-degree elbow.
 - 3) Velocity 1500 fpm (7.6 m/s) or Higher: 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and five segments for 90-degree elbow.
 - 4) Radius-to Diameter Ratio: 1.5.
 - b. Round Elbows, 12 Inches (305 mm) and Smaller in Diameter: Stamped or pleated.
 - c. Round Elbows, 14 Inches (356 mm) and Larger in Diameter: Standing seam
- C. Branch Configuration:
 1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-6, "Branch Connection."
 - a. Rectangular Main to Rectangular Branch: 45-degree entry.
 - b. Rectangular Main to Round Branch: Spin in.
 - c. Divided Supply Flow Branches Above 1,000 FPM and Primary Ductwork: Types 1, 2W, 4A and 4B are acceptable.
 - d. Divided Supply Flow Branches 1,000 FPM and Below and Secondary Ductwork: Types 1, 2W, 3, 4A and 4B are acceptable.
 - e. Divided Return Flow Branches Above 1,000 FPM: Types 1, 2W, 4A and 4B are acceptable.
 2. Round: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees." Saddle taps are permitted in existing duct.
 - a. Velocity 1000 fpm (5 m/s) or Lower: 90-degree tap.
 - b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm (5 to 7.6 m/s): Conical tap.
 - c. Velocity 1500 fpm (7.6 m/s) or Higher: 45-degree lateral.

END OF SECTION 233113

SECTION 233300

AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Backdraft and pressure relief dampers.
2. Manual volume dampers.
3. Control dampers.
4. Fire dampers.
5. Flange connectors.
6. Turning vanes.
7. Duct-mounted access doors.
8. Flexible connectors.
9. Duct accessory hardware.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 233723 "HVAC Gravity Ventilators" for roof-mounted ventilator caps.
2. Section 284621.11 "Addressable Fire-Alarm Systems" for duct-mounted fire and smoke detectors.
3. Section 284621.13 "Conventional Fire-Alarm Systems" for duct-mounted fire and smoke detectors.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and maintenance data.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

2.2 BACKDRAFT AND PRESSURE RELIEF DAMPERS

- A. Description: Gravity balanced.
- B. Maximum Air Velocity: 1000 fpm (5.1 m/s).
- C. Maximum System Pressure: 1-inch wg (0.25 kPa).
- D. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.05-inch- (1.3-mm-) thick, galvanized sheet steel, with welded corners or mechanically attached.
- E. Blades: Multiple single-piece blades, [center pivoted, maximum 6-inch (150-mm) width, [0.025-inch- (0.6-mm-) thick, roll-formed aluminum with sealed edges.
- F. Blade Action: Parallel.
- G. Blade Seals: Neoprene, mechanically locked.
- H. Blade Axles:
 - 1. Material: Galvanized steel.
 - 2. Diameter: 0.20 inch (5 mm).
- I. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.
- J. Bearings: Steel ball or synthetic pivot bushings.

2.3 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS

- A. Standard, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:
 - 1. Standard leakage rating.
 - 2. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
- B. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.05-inch- (1.3-mm-) thick, galvanized sheet steel, with welded corners or mechanically attached.
- C. Blades: Multiple single-piece blades, [center pivoted, maximum 6-inch (150-mm) width, [0.025-inch- (0.6-mm-) thick, roll-formed aluminum with sealed edges.
- D. Blade Action: Parallel.
- E. Blade Seals: Neoprene, mechanically locked.
- F. Blade Axles:
 - 1. Material: Galvanized steel.
 - 2. Diameter: 0.20 inch (5 mm).
- G. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.

- H. Bearings: Steel ball or synthetic pivot bushings.
 - a. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg (750 Pa) or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.

- 2. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.

2.4 CONTROL DAMPERS

A. Frames:

- 1. [Hat] [U] [Angle] shaped.
- 2. [0.094-inch- (2.4-mm-) thick, galvanized sheet steel] [0.05-inch- (1.3-mm-) thick stainless steel].
- 3. [Mitered and welded] [Interlocking, gusseted] corners.

B. Blades:

- 1. Multiple blade with maximum blade width of 6 inches (152 mm).
- 2. Opposed-blade design.
- 3. Galvanized-steel.
- 4. 0.064 inch (1.62 mm) thick single skin.
- 5. Blade Edging: Closed-cell neoprene.
- 6. Blade Edging: Inflatable seal blade edging, or replaceable rubber seals.

- C. Blade Axles: 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) diameter; galvanized steel; blade-linkage hardware of zinc-plated steel and brass; ends sealed against blade bearings.

D. Bearings:

- 1. Oil-impregnated bronze.
- 2. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg (750 Pa) or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
- 3. Thrust bearings at each end of every blade.

2.5 FIRE DAMPERS

- A. Type: Static and dynamic; rated and labeled according to UL 555 by an NRTL.

- B. Closing rating in ducts up to 4-inch wg (1-kPa) static pressure class and minimum 2000-fpm (10-m/s) velocity.

- C. Fire Rating: 1-1/2 hours.

- D. Frame: Curtain type with blades outside airstream; fabricated with roll-formed, 0.034-inch- (0.85-mm-) thick galvanized steel; with mitered and interlocking corners.

- E. Mounting Sleeve: Factory- or field-installed, galvanized sheet steel.

- 1. Minimum Thickness: 0.05 (1.3 mm) thick, as indicated, and of length to suit application.

2. Exception: Omit sleeve where damper-frame width permits direct attachment of perimeter mounting angles on each side of wall or floor; thickness of damper frame must comply with sleeve requirements.

F. Mounting Orientation: Vertical or horizontal as indicated.

G. Blades: Roll-formed, interlocking, 0.024-inch- (0.61-mm) thick, galvanized sheet steel. In place of interlocking blades, use full-length, 0.034-inch- (0.85-mm-) thick, galvanized-steel blade connectors.

H. Horizontal Dampers: Include blade lock and stainless-steel closure spring.

I. Heat-Responsive Device: Replaceable, 165 deg F (74 deg C) rated, fusible links.

2.6 FLANGE CONNECTORS

A. Description: roll-formed, factory-fabricated, slide-on transverse flange connectors, gaskets, and components.

B. Material: Galvanized steel.

C. Gage and Shape: Match connecting ductwork.

2.7 TURNING VANES

A. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Metal Ducts: Curved blades of galvanized sheet steel; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.

1. Acoustic Turning Vanes: Fabricate airfoil-shaped aluminum extrusions with perforated faces and fibrous-glass fill.

B. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Nonmetal Ducts: Fabricate curved blades of resin-bonded fiberglass with acrylic polymer coating; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.

C. General Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."

D. Vane Construction: Double wall.

2.8 DUCT-MOUNTED ACCESS DOORS

A. Duct-Mounted Access Doors: Fabricate access panels according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 7-2 (7-2M), "Duct Access Doors and Panels," and 7-3, "Access Doors - Round Duct."

1. Door:

- a. Double wall, rectangular.

- b. Galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class.
 - c. Vision panel.
 - d. Hinges and Latches: 1-by-1-inch (25-by-25-mm) butt or piano hinge and cam latches.
 - e. Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.
2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.

2.9 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. Materials: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics.
- B. Coatings and Adhesives: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.
- C. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip 5-3/4 inches (146 mm) wide attached to two strips of 2-3/4-inch- (70-mm-) wide, 0.028-inch- (0.7-mm-) thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.032-inch- (0.8-mm-) thick aluminum sheets. Provide metal compatible with connected ducts.
- D. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.
- 1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd. (880 g/sq. m).
 - 2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch (84 N/mm) in the warp and 360 lbf/inch (63 N/mm) in the filling.
 - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 93 deg C).
- E. Outdoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with weatherproof, synthetic rubber resistant to UV rays and ozone.
- 1. Minimum Weight: 24 oz./sq. yd. (810 g/sq. m).
 - 2. Tensile Strength: 530 lbf/inch (93 N/mm) in the warp and 440 lbf/inch (77 N/mm) in the filling.
 - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 50 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 45 to plus 121 deg C).

2.10 DUCT ACCESSORY HARDWARE

- A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and of length to suit duct-insulation thickness.
- B. Adhesives: High strength, quick setting, neoprene based, waterproof, and resistant to gasoline and grease.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.
- B. Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless-steel accessories in stainless-steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.
- C. Install backdraft dampers at inlet of exhaust fans or exhaust ducts as close as possible to exhaust fan unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Install volume dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches extend from larger ducts. Where dampers are installed in ducts having duct liner, install dampers with hat channels of same depth as liner, and terminate liner with nosing at hat channel.
 - 1. Install steel volume dampers in steel ducts.
 - 2. Install aluminum volume dampers in aluminum ducts.
- E. Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- F. Install test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated.
- G. Install fire and smoke dampers according to UL listing.
- H. Install duct access doors on sides of ducts to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and equipment at the following locations:
 - 1. On both sides of duct coils.
 - 2. Upstream from duct filters.
 - 3. At outdoor-air intakes and mixed-air plenums.
 - 4. At drain pans and seals.
 - 5. Downstream from manual volume dampers, control dampers, backdraft dampers, and equipment.
 - 6. Adjacent to and close enough to fire or smoke dampers, to reset or reinstall fusible links. Access doors for access to fire or smoke dampers having fusible links shall be pressure relief access doors and shall be outward operation for access doors installed upstream from dampers and inward operation for access doors installed downstream from dampers.
 - 7. At each change in direction and at maximum 50-foot (15-m) spacing.
 - 8. Upstream from turning vanes.
 - 9. Upstream or downstream from duct silencers.
 - 10. Control devices requiring inspection.
 - 11. Elsewhere as indicated.

- I. Install access doors with swing against duct static pressure.
- J. Access Door Sizes:
 - 1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches (200 by 125 mm).
 - 2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches (300 by 150 mm).
 - 3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches (460 by 250 mm).
 - 4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches (530 by 355 mm).
 - 5. Body Access: 25 by 14 inches (635 by 355 mm).
 - 6. Body plus Ladder Access: 25 by 17 inches (635 by 430 mm).
- K. Label access doors according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" to indicate the purpose of access door.
- L. Install flexible connectors to connect ducts to equipment.
- M. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Operate dampers to verify full range of movement.
 - 2. Inspect locations of access doors and verify that purpose of access door can be performed.
 - 3. Operate fire and smoke dampers to verify full range of movement and verify that proper heat-response device is installed.
 - 4. Inspect turning vanes for proper and secure installation.

END OF SECTION 233300

SECTION 233346

FLEXIBLE DUCTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Non-insulated flexible ducts.
 - 2. Insulated flexible ducts.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- C. Comply with the Air Diffusion Council's "ADC Flexible Air Duct Test Code FD 72-R1."
- D. Comply with ASTM E 96/E 96M, "Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials."

2.2 INSULATED FLEXIBLE DUCTS

- A. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, two-ply vinyl film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; **polyethylene or aluminized** vapor-barrier film.
 - 1. Pressure Rating: **10-inch wg (2500 Pa)** positive and **1.0-inch wg (250 Pa)** negative.
 - 2. Maximum Air Velocity: **4000 fpm (20 m/s)**.
 - 3. Temperature Range: **Minus 10 to plus 160 deg F (Minus 23 to plus 71 deg C)**.
 - 4. Insulation R-Value: **R6**.

2.3 FLEXIBLE DUCT CONNECTORS

- A. Clamps: **Nylon strap** in sizes **3 through 18 inches (75 through 460 mm)**, to suit duct size.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install flexible ducts according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.
- B. Install in indoor applications only. Flexible ductwork should not be exposed to UV lighting.
- C. Connect diffusers or light troffer boots to ducts with maximum **60-inch (1500-mm)** lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.
- D. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.
- E. Installation:
1. Install ducts fully extended.
 2. Do not bend ducts across sharp corners.
 3. Bends of flexible ducting shall not exceed a minimum of one duct diameter.
 4. Avoid contact with metal fixtures, water lines, pipes, or conduits.
 5. Install flexible ducts in a direct line, without sags, twists, or turns.
- F. Supporting Flexible Ducts:
1. Suspend flexible ducts with bands **1-1/2 inches (38 mm)** wide or wider and spaced a maximum of **48 inches (1200 mm)** apart. Maximum centerline sag between supports shall not exceed **1/2 inch (13 mm)** per **12 inches (300 mm)**.
 2. Install extra supports at bends placed approximately one duct diameter from center line of the bend.
 3. Ducts may rest on ceiling joists or truss supports. Spacing between supports shall not exceed the maximum spacing per manufacturer's written installation instructions.
 4. Vertically installed ducts shall be stabilized by support straps at a maximum of **72 inches (1800 mm)** o.c.

END OF SECTION 233346

SECTION 233423

HVAC POWER VENTILATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Centrifugal roof ventilators.
2. Ceiling-mounted ventilators.
3. In-line centrifugal fans.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
3. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
4. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators[**and seismic restraints**] and for designing vibration isolation bases.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and maintenance data.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. AMCA Compliance: Fans shall have AMCA-Certified performance ratings and shall bear the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CEILING-MOUNTED VENTILATORS

- A. Housing: Steel, lined with acoustical insulation.

- B. Fan Wheel: Centrifugal wheels directly mounted on motor shaft. Fan shrouds, motor, and fan wheel shall be removable for service.
- C. Electrical Requirements: Junction box for electrical connection on housing and receptacle for motor plug-in.
- D. Accessories:
 - 1. Variable-Speed Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.
 - 2. Manual Starter Switch: Single-pole rocker switch assembly with cover and pilot light.
 - 3. Time-Delay Switch: Assembly with single-pole rocker switch, timer, and cover plate.
 - 4. Motion Sensor: Motion detector with adjustable shutoff timer.
 - 5. Ceiling Radiation Damper: Fire-rated assembly with ceramic blanket, stainless-steel springs, and fusible link.
 - 6. Filter: Washable aluminum to fit between fan and grille.
 - 7. Isolation: Rubber-in-shear vibration isolators.
 - 8. Manufacturer's standard roof jack or wall cap, and transition fittings.

2.2 IN-LINE CENTRIFUGAL FANS

- A. Housing: Split, spun aluminum with aluminum straightening vanes, inlet and outlet flanges, and support bracket adaptable to floor, side wall, or ceiling mounting.
- B. Direct-Drive Units: Motor mounted in airstream, factory wired to disconnect switch located on outside of fan housing.
- C. Belt-Driven Units: Motor mounted on adjustable base, with adjustable sheaves, enclosure around belts within fan housing, and lubricating tubes from fan bearings extended to outside of fan housing.
- D. Fan Wheels: Aluminum, airfoil blades welded to aluminum hub.
- E. Accessories:
 - 1. Variable-Speed Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.
 - 2. Volume-Control Damper: Manually operated with quadrant lock, located in fan outlet.
 - 3. Companion Flanges: For inlet and outlet duct connections.
 - 4. Fan Guards: 1/2- by 1-inch (13- by 25-mm) mesh of galvanized steel in removable frame. Provide guard for inlet or outlet for units not connected to ductwork.
 - 5. Motor and Drive Cover (Belt Guard): Epoxy-coated steel.
 - 6. Vibration Isolators:
 - a. Type: **Elastomeric hangers.**
 - b. Static Deflection: [**1 inch (25 mm)**].

2.3 MOTORS

- A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - 1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
- B. Enclosure Type: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.

2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Certify sound-power level ratings according to AMCA 301, "Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data." Factory test fans according to AMCA 300, "Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans." Label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.
- B. Certify fan performance ratings, including flow rate, pressure, power, air density, speed of rotation, and efficiency by factory tests according to AMCA 210, "Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Aerodynamic Performance Rating." Label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Equipment Mounting:
 - 1. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic control devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
 - 2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."
- B. Ceiling Units: Suspend units from structure; use steel wire or metal straps.
- C. Support suspended units from structure using threaded steel rods and **elastomeric hangers** having a static deflection of **1 inch (25 mm)**.
- D. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.
- E. Label units according to requirements specified in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories. Make final duct connections with flexible connectors. Flexible connectors are specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Install ducts adjacent to power ventilators to allow service and maintenance.

- C. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- D. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
 - 2. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to ducts and electrical components are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, starters, and disconnect switches.
 - 3. Verify that cleaning and adjusting are complete.
 - 4. Disconnect fan drive from motor, verify proper motor rotation direction, and verify fan wheel free rotation and smooth bearing operation. Reconnect fan drive system, align and adjust belts, and install belt guards.
 - 5. Adjust belt tension.
 - 6. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
 - 7. Verify lubrication for bearings and other moving parts.
 - 8. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected ductwork systems are in fully open position.
 - 9. Disable automatic temperature-control operators, energize motor and adjust fan to indicated rpm, and measure and record motor voltage and amperage.
 - 10. Shut unit down and reconnect automatic temperature-control operators.
 - 11. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- C. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
- B. Adjust belt tension.
- C. Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures.
- D. Replace fan and motor pulleys as required to achieve design airflow.
- E. Lubricate bearings.

END OF SECTION 233423

SECTION 237224

DEDICATED OUTDOOR AIR SYSTEM

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This section includes Dedicated Outdoor Air System (DOAS) units for indoor applications.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit product data for specified products with the following information.
- B. General layout drawing with plan and elevation views including all relevant dimensions.
- C. Performance schedule including airflow, heating and cooling capacities, electrical data, unit weight.
- D. Full fan curve.
- E. Sound power data by octave band for all openings and radiated through the cabinet.
- F. Electrical schematics including field wiring connections.
- G. Component details including construction method and materials.
- H. Control point schematic and complete written sequence of operation.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Entire unit shall be UL 1995 certified and bear certification label by ETL, UL or CSA.
- B. Unit shall meet ASHRAE Standard 90.1 performance requirements.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Store equipment away from construction areas where it may be damaged and protected from harmful weather conditions.
- B. Keep factory shipping packaging in place until unit is ready to be installed.
- C. Follow manufacturer's instructions for rigging and placement of equipment.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate all system connections and building penetrations including electrical and duct connections.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Standard Warranty for the Unit (Parts only): 24 months (2 years) from shipment date

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Subject to compliance with project plans and specifications the following manufacturers are approved to supply products.
1. Acceptable Manufacturers
 - Oxygen8

2.2 DOAS Units

- A. DOAS units shall be factory assembled and tested. Units shall include insulated steel cabinet, split DX coil, electric heat, fan and motor assembly, filter rack, and integral controls

2.3 CABINET

- A. Cabinet shall be nominal 1-inch double wall panel with R6.5 thermal insulation. Cabinet exterior shall be 22-gauge pre-painted steel that meets or exceeds 650-hour salt spray test based on ASTM B117. Liners and other steel components shall be galvanized steel. All seams shall be sealed to provide airtight casing.
- B. Doors shall be nominal 1-inch double wall panel with the same construction as cabinet. Doors shall be fitted with hinges and door handles. The doors shall have one lockable handle as standard.
- C. The unit will be designed for service and maintenance on the bottom side for major components and front for filter and control panel access only to allow for a compact installation.
- D. All dampers shall have extruded heavy gauge 6063 aluminum frame that includes jamb seals. Blades shall be airfoil shaped extruded aluminum and include rubber blade seals. Linkage shall be installed in the frame outside of the airstream.
- E. All dampers shall include factory mounted, wired and tested actuators. Dampers shall be modulating, or two-position as required. Provide spring return dampers for outdoor air connections.

2.4 FILTERS

- A. Unit shall include 2-inch filter rack for the outdoor air path upstream of the DX coil. Filters shall be accessed through hinged filter access door. Supply one set of MERV 13 pleated filters for the outdoor air stream. All filters must be UL approved.
- B. Provide factory mounted pressure sensors to measure filter pressure drop across filters. Pressure drop shall be digital feedback to controller for utilization in control and alarm sequencing. Unit controller shall monitor filter pressure level and report when filter changes are required.

2.5 FANS

- A. Fans shall be mixed flow plenum type with direct drive motor. Fan and motor assembly shall be factory mounted and balanced. The fans will be capable of operating in ambient temperatures of up to 40°C.
- B. Fan motors shall be permanent magnet, synchronous motor type with integral digital motor controller. Fan bearings shall be serviceable type with an L-10 life of 40,000 hours. Fan motors will be UL approved.
- C. All fans shall be equipped with integral airflow monitoring system connected to the unit controller.
- D. Provide means to easily remove fan-motor assembly for service through standard doors.
- E. Fans should be designed such that all service can be performed in the field, including replacement of bearings.
- F. Fan motor drives shall be 208-230/60/1 and be UL approved. Fans will be protected by UL approved motor protection circuit breaker.

2.6 ELECTRIC HEATING COIL

- A. Provide open coil electric heaters of the size, capacity and performance shown in the equipment schedules.
- B. All duct heaters shall be tested and certified to UL and CSA.
- C. Frame to be corrosion-resistant and made of galvanized steel.
- D. Coils shall be made of high-grade Nickel-Chrome alloy and shall be insulated from the frame by means of non-rotating ceramic bushings.
- E. Heater to come with door mounted disconnect switch and air proving switch
- F. SCR control is time proportioning type that modulates the heater and supplies the exact amount of power to match the demand. Input signal will be 0-10V.
- G. Heaters shall be equipped with a fail-safe automatic reset disc-type thermal cut-out located in the top frame component above the heating element.
- H. Duct heaters shall be non-sensitive to air flow direction and interchangeable for horizontal or vertical ducts without impairing safety.
- I. Electric heater shall require a separate 208V/3ph power supply

2.7 DX HEAT PUMP COIL (Heating and Cooling)

- A. Where indicated, unit shall include AHRI 410 tested fin tube type DX coil for use with R-32. Fins shall be aluminum with a minimum thickness of 0.0060". Tubes shall be 3/8" OD, 0.013" tube wall seamless copper tube mechanically expanded into fins. Coil shall have interlaced circuits to match remote condensing unit when required. Coil casings shall be galvanized steel. Coils shall include external drain and vent connections. Coil shall be mounted in a rack over a stainless-steel double sloped condensate pan. Coil shall be shipped with nitrogen holding charge and tested to 700 psi.
- B. The AHU integration controller (EKEA) must be factory mounted and wired to EKEXVA expansion valve kit.
- C. Liquid and Gas thermistors are to be mounted to coil and wired to EKEA kit in the factory.
- D. EKEXVA expansion valve kit will be mounted, and connections will be brazed to coil. Liquid and Gas lines to be capped at outside of AHU. Coil and EKEXVA kit must be tested to 400 psi, and then nitrogen charged for shipment to site.

2.8 CONTROLS

- A. Unit shall include an integrated microprocessor-based unit controller. The controls shall be located in the electrical panel. All unit controls shall operate off a transformer from the main power supply for single point power connection. All internal controls and sensors shall be factory prewired and tested.
- B. Include with each unit a dial type human interface that allows monitoring and control of all unit functions. Human interface shall communicate with unit controller by hardwire connection.
- C. The control system will regulate temperatures, airflows and other functions as required. Unit controller shall be pre-programmed with factory tested software for all possible functions.
- D. The controller shall provide the following, refer to sequence of operation for specific unit control sequences;
 - Control of fans correcting for both changes in total static pressure and air density in both VAV and constant airflow applications.
 - Fan performance monitoring.
 - Ventilation airflow monitoring and control.
 - Airflow density correction for winter and summer conditions.
 - Energy recovery optimization including operation of bypass damper.
 - Supplemental heating and cooling when included.
 - Frost protection.
 - Monitoring alarms, faults and maintenance points including filter changeout.
 - Time and date schedules.
 - Humidity control.
 - Data logging and trending.
- E. Include wireless capability that will allow the client to access remotely via internal wi-fi network.

- F. If non factory controls are proposed as an option, a factory witness test is required to show integration and functionality.
- G. Controller shall be BACnet IP and BTL certified and include Modbus communication. Communication shall include monitoring, control, alarms, faults and maintenance information.
- H. Provide factory installed and tested contactors, overloads, fusing, starters motor speed controllers for supply fans. Include all necessary control transformers.
- I. Provide unit mounted non-fused disconnect switch with single point power connection.
- J. Supply all necessary temperature and pressure sensors complete with plug in wiring harnesses for proper operation of unit.
- K. When VRV integration is used, the AHU integration controller (EKEQ) must be factory mounted and wired to EKEXV expansion valve kit.
- L. Liquid and Gas thermistors are to be mounted to coil and wired to EKEQ kit in the factory.

2.9 PLASTIC COMPONENTS

- A. All plastic components that are in the airstream, must be of a UL94 rated material.
- B. If gasketing is used to join unit sections together, gasketing must be a UL94 approved compound.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install equipment in accordance with manufacturer instructions, these specifications, best practices, and all applicable building codes.

3.2 START UP SERVICE

- A. Engage factory authorized service technician to start up and commission units. Provide start up report to owner.

END OF SECTION 237224

SECTION 238127

VRV SPLIT SYSTEM VENTILATOR

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittals shall include the following: performance and capacity details of all units at specified indoor and outdoor conditions, piping schematics outputted from manufacturer specific software including pipe sizes and estimated piping lengths, refrigerant charge per system including ASHRAE 15 analysis, wiring diagrams, and 10 year parts only warranty information.
- B. Submittal shall include a copy of the installing contractor's certification of VRF manufacturer approved training.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL

- A. This section includes the design, performance, refrigerant details, controls and installation requirements for Daikin VRV systems (Variable Refrigerant Volume) distributed by DXS New England (978-977-9911).
- B. All units shall be listed and rated by ANSI/AHRI Standard 1230-2010 and meet all minimum IEER performance requirements as scheduled.
- C. The units shall be ANSI/UL STD 1995 listed and listed by Electrical Testing Labs (ETL) and bear the cETL label.
- D. All wiring shall be in accordance with the National Electric Code (NEC).
- E. The system will be produced in an ISO 9001 and ISO 14001 facility, which are standards set by the International Standard Organization (ISO). The system shall be factory tested for safety and function.
- F. The system and the design shall be in compliance with ASHRAE 15 Mechanical Refrigerant Code.
- G. Acceptable manufacturer : Daikin, distributed by DXS New England.
- H. Submittals for Daikin products not provided by DXS New England will not be considered.
- I. Alternate manufacturers shall send approval requests to consultant 14 days prior to bid day, and include all information relevant to the alternate VRF system, including but not limited to: unit selections, refrigerant piping layout, refrigerant charge with ASHRAE 15 analysis, branch selector box layout and locations, heating and cooling capacities at design temperatures and including capacity losses from piping lengths, defrost cycles, and combination ratios, dimensional and weight differences, and any other aspect of the system that differs from the system specified.

2.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. VRF system shall automatically vary the target evaporating and condensing temperatures based on building load and weather conditions to increase part load efficiency (Variable Refrigerant Temperature). The condensing unit shall also feature customizable operating modes which allows for the manual setting of target evaporating and condensing temperatures.

- B. The systems shall use R-32 refrigerant. Contractor to cover any additional cost if alternate proprietary refrigerants are used, and provide refrigerant charge documentation for ASHRAE/UL compliance.

2.3 Heat Pump

- A. System shall be a two pipe heat pump switchover VRF system. The specified system is not a simultaneous heating and cooling heat recovery system.

2.4 START-UP AND WARRANTY

- A. Installing contractor must be certified by VRF manufacturer. The bidders shall be required to submit training certification proof with bid documents and submittal documents. Untrained contractors who wish to bid this project may contact DXS New England (978-977-9911) to arrange training prior to bid day.
- B. The manufacturer shall provide a factory trained service technician to start-up each unit. Manufacturer shall provide instruction to the owners' personnel on proper unit operation and maintenance.
- C. The warranty period on all parts and compressors shall commence on the date of initial start-up and shall continue for a period of Ten (10) years not to exceed one hundred and twenty six (126) months from date of shipment. Proper maintenance of the equipment shall be conducted by certified technicians as per the manufacturer or manufacturer's representative requirements. Maintenance logs shall be supplied by the owner upon request.
- D. All manufacturer warranty shall be for parts only. All diagnosis and labour warranty shall be carried out by installing contractor as per the warranty requirements of this project.

2.5 REFRIGERANT PIPING

- A. Refer and comply to the refrigerant piping specifications, including the special considerations for VRF refrigerant piping section.
- B. Standard T style joints are not acceptable for a variable refrigerant volume system. Manufacturer specific Y joints shall be supplied by the VRF manufacturer.

2.6 FAN COILS

- A. Fan coils shall monitor and maintain the unit superheat (cooling mode) or subcooling (heating mode) using a computerized PID control. Internal unit components shall be factory wired and piped, and complete with electronic proportional expansion valve, flare connections, condensate drain pan, self-diagnostics, and auto-restart function.

2.7 FXAA – WALL MOUNTED UNIT

- A. Daikin indoor unit FXAA shall be a wall mounted fan coil unit for installation onto a wall within a conditioned space. A mildew-proof, polystyrene condensate drain pan and resin net mold resistant filter shall be included as standard equipment.
- B. The indoor unit's sound pressure shall range from 31 dB(A) to 41 dB(A) at low speed measured at 3.3 feet below and 3.3 feet away from the unit.

- C. The unit shall have an auto-swing louver which ensures efficient air distribution, which closes automatically when the unit stops. The remote controller shall be able to set five (5) steps of discharge angle. The front grille shall be easily removed for washing.
- D. The cabinet shall be affixed to a factory supplied wall mounting template and located in the conditioned space.
- E. The cabinet shall be constructed with sound absorbing foamed polystyrene and polyethylene insulation.
- F. The fan type shall be direct-drive cross-flow with statically and dynamically balanced impeller with high and low fan speeds available.
- G. The indoor unit shall have a factory installed refrigerant leak sensor built in. If a leak is detected, the unit shall go into circulation mode and provide full airflow. The unit shall have a signal output in event of a leak to connect to external ventilation, damper, alarm, etc.
- H. Units shall be provided with a loose field installed condensate pump.

2.8 FXFA – ROUNDFLOW CEILING CASSETTE UNIT

- A. Daikin indoor unit model FXFA shall be a round flow ceiling cassette fan coil unit with a variable speed direct drive DC type fan for installation into the ceiling cavity, equipped with an air panel grill. It shall be a round flow 360° air distribution type with a fresh white, impact resistant decoration panel.
- B. The supply air is distributed via four individually controlled motorized louvers. The louvers can be manually and individually adjusted for multiple configurations, without requiring blank off plates.
- C. The indoor unit shall be equipped with built-in occupancy sensor and surface temperature sensor to optimize occupant comfort.
- D. The indoor unit's sound pressure shall range from 27 dB(A) to 34 dB(A) at low speed measured at 5 feet below the unit.
- E. Return air shall be through the concentric panel, which includes a resin net, mold resistant, antibacterial filter.
- F. The indoor units shall be equipped with a condensate pan with antibacterial treatment and factory-mounted condensate pump. The pump shall provide up to 33-1/2" of lift from bottom of unit to top of the drain piping with built-in safety shutoff and alarm.
- G. The fan shall have a variable speed direct drive DC motor with a statically and dynamically balanced impeller with 3 user-selectable fan speeds. The automatic fan speed mode shall allow the fan to vary between 5 speeds based on space load.
- H. The fan motor shall be equipped as standard with adjustable external static pressure (ESP) settings to allow operation with the high efficiency air filter options.
- I. The indoor unit shall have a factory installed refrigerant leak sensor built in. If a leak is detected, the unit shall go into circulation mode and provide full airflow. The unit shall have a signal output in event of a leak to connect to external ventilation, damper, alarm, etc.

2.9 FXZA – 4 WAY 2'x2' CEILING CASSETTE UNIT

- A. Daikin indoor unit model FXZA shall be a ceiling cassette fan coil unit with a variable speed direct drive DC type fan for installation into the ceiling cavity, equipped with an air panel grill. It shall be a four-way air distribution type with fresh white or Daikin silver, impact resistant washable decoration panel. The supply air is distributed via motorized louvers which can be horizontally and vertically adjusted from 0° to 90°.
- B. The indoor unit's sound pressure shall range from 25.5 dB(A) to 33 dB(A) at low speed measured at 5 feet below the unit.
- C. The 4-way supply air flow shall be capable of field modification to 2-way or 3-way airflow to accommodate various installation configurations including corner installations.
- D. The decoration panel shall be a low-profile design, extending only 5/16" below the ceiling without any overlap with neighboring ceiling tiles, allowing for installation directly adjacent to other ceiling components such as lights, diffusers, and sprinklers, etc.
- E. Return air shall be through the concentric panel, which includes a resin net mold resistant filter. The indoor units shall be equipped with a condensate pan and a factory-mounted condensate pump with up to 21" of lift, and have a built-in safety shutoff and alarm.
- F. Three auto-swing positions shall be available to choose from, which include standard, draft prevention and ceiling stain prevention.
- G. The fan shall have a variable speed direct drive DC motor with a statically and dynamically balanced impeller with 3 user-selectable fan speeds. The automatic fan speed mode shall allow the fan to vary between 5 speeds based on space load.
- H. The indoor unit shall have a factory installed refrigerant leak sensor built in. If a leak is detected, the unit shall go into circulation mode and provide full airflow. The unit shall have a signal output in event of a leak to connect to external ventilation, damper, alarm, etc.

2.10 CONDENSING UNIT

A. RXYA R32 VRV CONDENSING UNIT

- B. The condensing unit shall be pre-wired with all necessary electronic and refrigerant controls. The refrigeration circuit of the condensing unit shall consist of Daikin inverter scroll compressors, motors, fans, heat exchanger, electronic expansion valves, solenoid valves, 4-way valve, distribution headers, capillaries, filters, shut off valves, oil separators, service ports, liquid receiver (heat recovery only) and suction accumulator.
- C. The system will automatically restart operation after a power failure and will not cause any settings to be lost.
- D. The unit shall incorporate an auto-charging feature to ensure proper refrigerant charge.
- E. The following safety devices shall be included on the condensing unit: high pressure sensor and switch, low pressure sensor, control circuit fuses, crankcase heaters, fusible plug, overload relay, inverter overload protector, thermal protectors for compressor and fan motors, over current protection for the inverter, and anti-recycling timers.
- F. The Daikin inverter scroll compressors shall be high efficiency reluctance DC (digitally commutating), hermetically sealed, variable speed type. Temperatures and pressures shall be read every 20 seconds and calculated. With each reading, the compressor capacity (INV frequency) shall

be controlled to eliminate deviation from target value. Non inverter-driven compressors shall not be accepted.

- G. Neodymium magnets shall be adopted in the rotor construction to yield a higher torque and efficiency in the compressor instead of the normal ferrite magnet type. Upon complete stop of the compressor, the neodymium magnets will position the rotor into the optimum position for a low torque start.
- H. The compressors' motors shall have a cooling system using discharge gas, to avoid sudden changes in temperature resulting in significant stresses on winding and bearings.
- I. Inverter board shall be refrigerant-cooled to prevent inefficient and unstable operation that can result from air-cooled inverter boards due to varying ambient conditions.
- J. The compressor shall be internally isolated to avoid the transmission of vibration.
- K. In the case of multiple condenser modules, operation hours of the compressors shall be balanced by means of the Duty Cycling Function.
- L. The fan motor shall have inherent protection and permanently lubricated bearings. The motor shall be provided with a fan guard to prevent contact with moving parts. The condensing unit shall consist of one or more propeller type, direct-drive 350 or 750 W fan motors that have multiple speed operation via a DC (digitally commutating) inverter. Motors shall be capable of delivering design air at high external static pressures up to 0.32 in WG (factory set as standard at 0.12 in. WG) to accommodate field applied condensing unit discharge ductwork..
- M. Night setback control for low noise operation shall automatically limit the maximum speed of the fan motor.
- N. The heat exchanger on the condensing units shall be manufactured from Hi-X seamless copper tubes with N-shape internal grooves mechanically bonded on to aluminum fins to an e-Pass Design. The heat exchanger coil shall be of a waffle louver fin and rifled bore tube design to ensure high efficiency performance.
- O. The fins are to be covered with an anti-corrosion hydrophilic blue coating as standard with a salt spray test rating of 1000hr (ASTM B117 & Blister Rating:10), Acetic acid salt spray test of 500hr (ASTM G85 & Blister Rating:10).
- P. The outdoor unit shall shut down the compressor in the event of a refrigerant leak detection at the connected indoor units.

2.11 RXTA 1PH HEAT PUMP CONDENSING UNITS

- A. The outdoor unit shall be factory assembled and pre-wired with all necessary electronic and refrigerant controls. The refrigeration circuit of the condensing unit shall consist of a Daikin swing compressor, motors, fans, condenser coil, electronic expansion valves, solenoid valves, 4-way valve, distribution headers, capillaries, filters, shut off valves, oil separator, service ports and suction line accumulator.
- B. The outdoor system shall be able to support the connection of up to 10 indoor unit's dependant on the model of the outdoor unit.
- C. The system will automatically restart operation after a power failure and will not cause any settings to be lost, thus eliminating the need for reprogramming.

- D. The following safety devices shall be included on the condensing unit; high pressure switch, low pressure sensor, control circuit fuses, crankcase heaters, fusible plug, overload relay, inverter overload protector, thermal protectors for compressor and fan motors, over current protection for the inverter and anti-recycling timers.
- E. To ensure the liquid refrigerant does not flash when supplying to the various indoor unit units, the circuit shall be provided with a sub-cooling feature.
- F. Oil recovery cycle shall be automatic occurring 2 hours after start of operation and then every 8 hours of operation.
- G. The outdoor unit shall be completely weatherproof and corrosion resistant. The unit shall be constructed from rust-proofed mild steel panels coated with a baked enamel finish.
- H. The condensing unit fan(s) shall consist of propeller type, direct-drive fan motors that have multiple speed operation via a DC (digitally commutating) inverter.
- I. The fan motor shall have inherent protection and permanently lubricated bearings and shall be provided with a fan guard to prevent contact with moving parts.
- J. The heat exchanger coil shall be of a waffle louver fin and rifled bore tube design manufactured from Hi-X seamless copper tube. The fins are to be covered with an anti-corrosion acrylic resin and hydrophilic film type E1.
- K. The outdoor unit shall be capable of heating operation at -13°F ambient temperature. Tested factory data on heating capacity and efficiency shall be available.
- L. The outdoor unit shall be capable of cooling operation down to +23°F without any additional low ambient controls.
- M. The outdoor unit shall shut down the compressor in the event of a refrigerant leak detection at the connected indoor units.

2.12 LOCAL CONTROLS

- A. Fan coil units shall be supplied with individual zone controllers, similar to Daikin model BRC1NRV71.
- B. Zone controllers shall be hard wired by installing contractor.
- C. Controllers shall be able to function as follows:
 - 1. The controller shall have dual or single Cool and Heat setpoints for occupied periods, and independent setback setpoints for unoccupied periods.
 - 2. The controller shall the ability to digitally prohibit individual buttons and functions.
 - 3. The controller shall have a self diagnosis function that constantly monitors the system for malfunctions (total of 80 components).
 - 4. An LCD digital display will allow the temperature to be set in 1°F units.
 - 5. The controller shall be equipped with a thermostat sensor.
 - 6. The controller shall have the ability to automatically changeover the mode of operation with dual or single setpoints.
 - 7. Controller shall have built-in 7 day, weekday plus Saturday Sunday (5+1+1), weekday plus weekend (5+2) and everyday (1) scheduler.

8. Controller shall have a simple display mode, displaying only the operation mode, the setpoint(s), and the room temperature.

2.13 CENTRAL CONTROLS

- A. Provide an advanced multi-zone controller for installation in a common area as shown on the plans. The controller shall have a touch screen display with the screen views and functionalities described below.
- B. Controller shall include a cloud-based monitoring software with 5 year subscription license. Software shall provide the ability to control all VRV systems connected and monitor equipment health status trending including analysis of the VRV systems. Internet connection to be brought to the device by the building IT department.
- C. Central control of set points, schedules, fan speeds, heat/cool mode, and of setback (override) temperature settings during unoccupied periods.
- D. Adjustable temperature limits to restrict local wall mounted thermostat setpoint ranges.
- E. Visible and audible alarm indication of any system malfunctions with error code.
- F. Tiered hierarchy allowing for control of fan coil units independently or as a group.
- G. Upon any changeover, a guard timer shall prevent another changeover for a period of 15, 30, or 60 (default) minutes.
- H. The guard timer shall be ignored by a change of setpoint manually from either the central controller or the remote controller, by schedule, or if the secondary deadband is reached with either of the automatic changeover algorithms. The secondary changeover deadband shall be the sum of the primary changeover deadband (adjustable) $\pm 1^{\circ}\text{F}$ (adjustable)
- I. The central controller shall have the capability for site floor plans to be uploaded as a background to create a graphics interface.
- J. BACnet Server
- K. The iTM BACnet Server Gateway Option shall be capable of making the VRV central controller work as a BACnet gateway using the BACnet/IP protocol. The iTM BACnet Server Gateway Option shall be capable of exposing indoor unit management points as BACnet objects to the BMS.
- L. The iTM BACnet Server Gateway Option shall allow the following functions:
 1. Support Change of Value (COV) notifications.
 2. Provide unique virtual BACnet device identification number (ID) for every indoor unit group address.
 3. The iTM BACnet Server Gateway Option shall be capable of being configured as a foreign device. It shall be capable of communicating across BACnet Broadcast Management Devices (BBMD) in different subnet networks.
- M. In addition to the standard BACnet VRF points, the Building Management System shall monitor and/or control the following BACnet objects for indoor units:
 1. Occupancy Mode : Unoccupied, Occupied, Standby
 2. Cooling and heating setpoints during occupied and unoccupied modes.
- N. The Building Management System may choose to monitor and control the following BACnet objects linked to iTM control logic:

1. Enable/Disable iTM Schedule operation.
2. Enable/Disable iTM Auto Changeover Operation.
3. Set Timed Override Minutes - Monitor and configure timer extension for the indoor unit on iTM (30, 60, 90, 120, 150, 180 minutes)
4. System forced off - Enable/Disable all emergency stop programs that are registered on the iTM.

- O. The BMS shall have the ability to utilize scheduling functions on the iTouch Manager.
- P. The BMS shall have the ability to utilize automatic changeover function on the iTouch Manager, removing the need to program automatic changeover sequences on the BMS.
- Q. VRF manufacturer shall commission the BACnet server. BMS contractor shall provide VRF manufacturer with static IP address and instance number for commissioning. IP connection shall be by BMS contractor.
- R. All programming for monitoring and control of VRF system via the BACnet server shall be by BMS contractor, as per the Sequence of Operation.

2.14 ELECTRICAL

- A. Independent electrical power for fan coils and branch selector boxes shall be 208/230 volts, 1 phase, 60 hertz. The unit shall be capable of operating within the limits of 187 volts to 253 volts.
- B. Unless limited by local electrical codes and standards, multiple fan coils and branch selector boxes can be connected to the same breaker. Field provided individual disconnect switches for each fan coil are required.
- C. Electrical power for condensing units shall be 208/230 volts, 3 phase, 60 hertz. The unit shall be capable of operating within the limits of 187 volts to 253 volts.
- D. The control voltage between the indoor and outdoor unit shall be 16VDC. The control wiring shall be communication type stranded non-shielded 18-2 AWG.
- E. Control wiring shall be installed in a daisy chain configuration between all VRF components as per Manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Units shall be stored and handled according to the manufacturer's recommendations. Units shall be kept clean and isolated from dust and debris.
- B. Contractor shall inspect all equipment upon delivery and notify shipping company and manufacturer immediately of any damage.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install condensing units on a flat surface level within 1/8 inch, and elevated a minimum of 18" from ground or roof surface. Provide intermediate supports as recommended by the equipment manufacturer.
- B. Provide all necessary control wiring as recommended by the manufacturer.
- C. High/low pressure gas line, liquid, and suction lines must be individually insulated between the outdoor and indoor units.
- D. Contact DXS (978-977-9911) prior to installation to review and confirm piping layout and lengths.
- E. Use refrigeration best practice to allow pipes to expand and contract freely. Review manufacturer installation instructions to ensure expansion joints are properly designed.
- F. Pressure test ALL systems to 550 PSI after system was vacuumed and held to below 500 microns for at least one hour. Review manufacturer installation instructions for proper pressure test procedures.

END OF SECTION 238127

SECTION 238127

VRF SPLIT-SYSTEM AIR-CONDITIONERS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 Submittals

- A. Submittals shall include the following: performance and capacity details of all units at specified indoor and outdoor conditions, piping schematics outputted from manufacturer specific software including pipe sizes and estimated piping lengths, refrigerant charge per system including ASHRAE 15 analysis, wiring diagrams, and 10 year parts only warranty information.
- B. Submittal shall include a copy of the installing contractor's certification of VRF manufacturer approved training.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.1 General

- A. This section includes the design, performance, refrigerant details, controls and installation requirements for Daikin VRV systems (Variable Refrigerant Volume) distributed by DXS New England (978-977-9911).
- B. All units shall be listed and rated by ANSI/AHRI Standard 1230-2010 and meet all minimum IEER performance requirements as scheduled.
- C. The units shall be ANSI/UL STD 1995 listed and listed by Electrical Testing Labs (ETL) and bear the cETL label.
- D. All wiring shall be in accordance with the National Electric Code (NEC).
- E. The system will be produced in an ISO 9001 and ISO 14001 facility, which are standards set by the International Standard Organization (ISO). The system shall be factory tested for safety and function.
- F. The system and the design shall be in compliance with ASHRAE 15 Mechanical Refrigerant Code.
- G. Acceptable manufacturer : Daikin, distributed by DXS New England.
- H. Submittals for Daikin products not provided by DXS New England will not be considered.
- I. Alternate manufacturers shall send approval requests to consultant 14 days prior to bid day, and include all information relevant to the alternate VRF system, including but not limited to: unit selections, refrigerant piping layout, refrigerant charge with ASHRAE 15 analysis, branch selector box layout and locations, heating and cooling capacities at design temperatures and including capacity losses from piping lengths, defrost cycles, and combination ratios, dimensional and weight differences, and any other aspect of the system that differs from the system specified.

2.2 System Description

- A. VRF system shall automatically vary the target evaporating and condensing temperatures based on building load and weather conditions to increase part load efficiency (Variable Refrigerant Temperature). The condensing unit shall also feature customizable operating modes which allows for the manual setting of target evaporating and condensing temperatures.
- B. The systems shall use R-32 refrigerant. Contractor to cover any additional cost if alternate proprietary refrigerants are used, and provide refrigerant charge documentation for ASHRAE/UL compliance.

2.3 Heat Pump

- A. System shall be a two pipe heat pump switchover VRF system. The specified system is not a simultaneous heating and cooling heat recovery system.

2.4 Start-Up and Warranty

- A. Installing contractor must be certified by VRF manufacturer. The bidders shall be required to submit training certification proof with bid documents and submittal documents. Untrained contractors who wish to bid this project may contact DXS New England (978-977-9911) to arrange training prior to bid day.
- B. The manufacturer shall provide a factory trained service technician to start-up each unit. Manufacturer shall provide instruction to the owners' personnel on proper unit operation and maintenance.
- C. The warranty period on all parts and compressors shall commence on the date of initial start-up and shall continue for a period of Ten (10) years not to exceed one hundred and twenty six (126) months from date of shipment. Proper maintenance of the equipment shall be conducted by certified technicians as per the manufacturer or manufacturer's representative requirements. Maintenance logs shall be supplied by the owner upon request.
- D. All manufacturer warranty shall be for parts only. All diagnosis and labour warranty shall be carried out by installing contractor as per the warranty requirements of this project.

2.5 Refrigerant Piping

- A. Refer and comply to the refrigerant piping specifications, including the special considerations for VRF refrigerant piping section.
- B. Standard T style joints are not acceptable for a variable refrigerant volume system. Manufacturer specific Y joints shall be supplied by the VRF manufacturer.

2.6 Fan Coils

- A. Fan coils shall monitor and maintain the unit superheat (cooling mode) or subcooling (heating mode) using a computerized PID control. Internal unit components shall be factory wired and piped, and complete with electronic proportional expansion valve, flare connections, condensate drain pan, self-diagnostics, and auto-restart function.
- B. FXAA – Wall Mounted Unit
1. Daikin indoor unit FXAA shall be a wall mounted fan coil unit for installation onto a wall within a conditioned space. A mildew-proof, polystyrene condensate drain pan and resin net mold resistant filter shall be included as standard equipment.
 2. The indoor unit's sound pressure shall range from 31 dB(A) to 41 dB(A) at low speed measured at 3.3 feet below and 3.3 feet away from the unit.
 3. The unit shall have an auto-swing louver which ensures efficient air distribution, which closes automatically when the unit stops. The remote controller shall be able to set five (5) steps of discharge angle. The front grille shall be easily removed for washing.
 4. The cabinet shall be affixed to a factory supplied wall mounting template and located in the conditioned space.
 5. The cabinet shall be constructed with sound absorbing foamed polystyrene and polyethylene insulation.
 6. The fan type shall be direct-drive cross-flow with statically and dynamically balanced impeller with high and low fan speeds available.
 7. The indoor unit shall have a factory installed refrigerant leak sensor built in. If a leak is detected, the unit shall go into circulation mode and provide full airflow. The unit shall have a signal output in event of a leak to connect to external ventilation, damper, alarm, etc.
 8. Units shall be provided with a loose field installed condensate pump.
- C. FXFA – ROUND FLOW CEILING CASSETTE UNIT
1. Daikin indoor unit model FXFA shall be a round flow ceiling cassette fan coil unit with a variable speed direct drive DC type fan for installation into the ceiling cavity, equipped with an air panel grill. It shall be a round flow 360° air distribution type with a fresh white, impact resistant decoration panel.
 2. The supply air is distributed via four individually controlled motorized louvers. The louvers can be manually and individually adjusted for multiple configurations, without requiring blank off plates.
 3. The indoor unit shall be equipped with built-in occupancy sensor and surface temperature sensor to optimize occupant comfort.
 4. The indoor unit's sound pressure shall range from 27 dB(A) to 34 dB(A) at low speed measured at 5 feet below the unit.
 5. Return air shall be through the concentric panel, which includes a resin net, mold resistant, antibacterial filter.
 6. The indoor units shall be equipped with a condensate pan with antibacterial treatment and factory-mounted condensate pump. The pump shall provide up to 33-1/2" of lift from bottom of unit to top of the drain piping with built-in safety

shutoff and alarm.

- a. The fan shall have a variable speed direct drive DC motor with a statically and dynamically balanced impeller with 3 user-selectable fan speeds. The automatic fan speed mode shall allow the fan to vary between 5 speeds based on space load.
- b. The fan motor shall be equipped as standard with adjustable external static pressure (ESP) settings to allow operation with the high efficiency air filter options.
7. The indoor unit shall have a factory installed refrigerant leak sensor built in. If a leak is detected, the unit shall go into circulation mode and provide full airflow. The unit shall have a signal output in event of a leak to connect to external ventilation, damper, alarm, etc.
8. FXZA – 4 Way 2'x2' Ceiling Cassette Unit
 - a. Daikin indoor unit model FXZA shall be a ceiling cassette fan coil unit with a variable speed direct drive DC type fan for installation into the ceiling cavity, equipped with an air panel grill. It shall be a four-way air distribution type with fresh white or Daikin silver, impact resistant washable decoration panel. The supply air is distributed via motorized louvers which can be horizontally and vertically adjusted from 0° to 90°.
 - b. The indoor unit's sound pressure shall range from 25.5 dB(A) to 33 dB(A) at low speed measured at 5 feet below the unit.
 - c. The 4-way supply air flow shall be capable of field modification to 2-way or 3-way airflow to accommodate various installation configurations including corner installations.
 - d. The decoration panel shall be a low-profile design, extending only 5/16" below the ceiling without any overlap with neighboring ceiling tiles, allowing for installation directly adjacent to other ceiling components such as lights, diffusers, and sprinklers, etc.
 - e. Return air shall be through the concentric panel, which includes a resin net mold resistant filter. The indoor units shall be equipped with a condensate pan and a factory-mounted condensate pump with up to 21" of lift, and have a built-in safety shutoff and alarm.
 - f. Three auto-swing positions shall be available to choose from, which include standard, draft prevention and ceiling stain prevention.
 - g. The fan shall have a variable speed direct drive DC motor with a statically and dynamically balanced impeller with 3 user-selectable fan speeds. The automatic fan speed mode shall allow the fan to vary between 5 speeds based on space load.
 - h. The indoor unit shall have a factory installed refrigerant leak sensor built in. If a leak is detected, the unit shall go into circulation mode and provide full airflow. The unit shall have a signal output in event of a leak to connect to external ventilation, damper, alarm, etc.

D. Condensing Unit

1. RXYA R32 VRV CONDENSING UNIT

- a. The condensing unit shall be pre-wired with all necessary electronic and refrigerant controls. The refrigeration circuit of the condensing unit shall consist of Daikin inverter scroll compressors, motors, fans, heat exchanger, electronic expansion valves, solenoid valves, 4-way valve, distribution headers, capillaries, filters, shut off valves, oil separators, service ports, liquid receiver (heat recovery only) and suction accumulator.
- b. The system will automatically restart operation after a power failure and will not cause any settings to be lost.
- c. The unit shall incorporate an auto-charging feature to ensure proper refrigerant charge.
- d. The following safety devices shall be included on the condensing unit: high pressure sensor and switch, low pressure sensor, control circuit fuses, crankcase heaters, fusible plug, overload relay, inverter overload protector, thermal protectors for compressor and fan motors, over current protection for the inverter, and anti-recycling timers.
- e. The Daikin inverter scroll compressors shall be high efficiency reluctance DC (digitally commutating), hermetically sealed, variable speed type. Temperatures and pressures shall be read every 20 seconds and calculated. With each reading, the compressor capacity (INV frequency) shall be controlled to eliminate deviation from target value. Non inverter-driven compressors shall not be accepted.
- f. Neodymium magnets shall be adopted in the rotor construction to yield a higher torque and efficiency in the compressor instead of the normal ferrite magnet type. Upon complete stop of the compressor, the neodymium magnets will position the rotor into the optimum position for a low torque start.
- g. The compressors' motors shall have a cooling system using discharge gas, to avoid sudden changes in temperature resulting in significant stresses on winding and bearings.
- h. Inverter board shall be refrigerant-cooled to prevent inefficient and unstable operation that can result from air-cooled inverter boards due to varying ambient conditions.
- i. The compressor shall be internally isolated to avoid the transmission of vibration.
- j. In the case of multiple condenser modules, operation hours of the compressors shall be balanced by means of the Duty Cycling Function.
- k. The fan motor shall have inherent protection and permanently lubricated bearings. The motor shall be provided with a fan guard to prevent contact with moving parts. The condensing unit shall consist of one or more propeller type, direct-drive 350 or 750 W fan motors that have multiple speed operation via a DC (digitally commutating) inverter. Motors shall be

capable of delivering design air at high external static pressures up to 0.32 in WG (factory set as standard at 0.12 in. WG) to accommodate field applied condensing unit discharge ductwork..

- l. Night setback control for low noise operation shall automatically limit the maximum speed of the fan motor.
- m. The heat exchanger on the condensing units shall be manufactured from Hi-X seamless copper tubes with N-shape internal grooves mechanically bonded on to aluminum fins to an e-Pass Design. The heat exchanger coil shall be of a waffle louver fin and rifled bore tube design to ensure high efficiency performance.
- n. The fins are to be covered with an anti-corrosion hydrophilic blue coating as standard with a salt spray test rating of 1000hr (ASTM B117 & Blister Rating:10), Acetic acid salt spray test of 500hr (ASTM G85 & Blister Rating:10).
- o. The outdoor unit shall shut down the compressor in the event of a refrigerant leak detection at the connected indoor units.

2. RXTA 1PH HEAT PUMP CONDENSING UNITS

- a. The outdoor unit shall be factory assembled and pre-wired with all necessary electronic and refrigerant controls. The refrigeration circuit of the condensing unit shall consist of a Daikin swing compressor, motors, fans, condenser coil, electronic expansion valves, solenoid valves, 4-way valve, distribution headers, capillaries, filters, shut off valves, oil separator, service ports and suction line accumulator.
- b. The outdoor system shall be able to support the connection of up to 10 indoor unit's dependant on the model of the outdoor unit.
- c. The system will automatically restart operation after a power failure and will not cause any settings to be lost, thus eliminating the need for reprogramming.
- d. The following safety devices shall be included on the condensing unit; high pressure switch, low pressure sensor, control circuit fuses, crankcase heaters, fusible plug, overload relay, inverter overload protector, thermal protectors for compressor and fan motors, over current protection for the inverter and anti-recycling timers.
- e. To ensure the liquid refrigerant does not flash when supplying to the various indoor unit units, the circuit shall be provided with a sub-cooling feature.
- f. Oil recovery cycle shall be automatic occurring 2 hours after start of operation and then every 8 hours of operation.
- g. The outdoor unit shall be completely weatherproof and corrosion resistant. The unit shall be constructed from rust-proofed mild steel panels coated with a baked enamel finish.
- h. The condensing unit fan(s) shall consist of propeller type, direct-drive fan

motors that have multiple speed operation via a DC (digitally commutating) inverter.

- i. The fan motor shall have inherent protection and permanently lubricated bearings and shall be provided with a fan guard to prevent contact with moving parts.
- j. The heat exchanger coil shall be of a waffle louver fin and rifled bore tube design manufactured from Hi-X seamless copper tube. The fins are to be covered with an anti-corrosion acrylic resin and hydrophilic film type E1.
- k. The outdoor unit shall be capable of heating operation at -13°F ambient temperature. Tested factory data on heating capacity and efficiency shall be available.
- l. The outdoor unit shall be capable of cooling operation down to +23°F without any additional low ambient controls.
- m. The outdoor unit shall shut down the compressor in the event of a refrigerant leak detection at the connected indoor units.

E. Local Controls

- 1. Fan coil units shall be supplied with individual zone controllers, similar to Daikin model BRC1NRV71.
 - a. Zone controllers shall be hard wired by installing contractor.
 - b. Controllers shall be able to function as follows:
 - 1) The controller shall have dual or single Cool and Heat setpoints for occupied periods, and independent setback setpoints for unoccupied periods.
 - 2) The controller shall the ability to digitally prohibit individual buttons and functions.
 - 3) The controller shall have a self diagnosis function that constantly monitors the system for malfunctions (total of 80 components).
 - 4) An LCD digital display will allow the temperature to be set in 1°F units.
 - 5) The controller shall be equipped with a thermostat sensor.
 - 6) The controller shall have the ability to automatically changeover the mode of operation with dual or single setpoints.
 - 7) Controller shall have built-in 7 day, weekday plus Saturday Sunday (5+1+1), weekday plus weekend (5+2) and everyday (1) scheduler.
 - 8) Controller shall have a simple display mode, displaying only the operation mode, the setpoint(s), and the room temperature.

F. Central Controls

- 1. Provide an advanced multi-zone controller for installation in a common area as shown on the plans. The controller shall have a touch screen display with the screen views and functionalities described below.

2. Controller shall include a cloud-based monitoring software with 5 year subscription license. Software shall provide the ability to control all VRV systems connected and monitor equipment health status trending including analysis of the VRV systems. Internet connection to be brought to the device by the building IT department.
3. Central control of set points, schedules, fan speeds, heat/cool mode, and of setback (override) temperature settings during unoccupied periods.
4. Adjustable temperature limits to restrict local wall mounted thermostat setpoint ranges.
5. Visible and audible alarm indication of any system malfunctions with error code.
6. Tiered hierarchy allowing for control of fan coil units independently or as a group.
 - a. Upon any changeover, a guard timer shall prevent another changeover for a period of 15, 30, or 60 (default) minutes.
 - b. The guard timer shall be ignored by a change of setpoint manually from either the central controller or the remote controller, by schedule, or if the secondary deadband is reached with either of the automatic changeover algorithms. The secondary changeover deadband shall be the sum of the primary changeover deadband (adjustable) $\pm 1^{\circ}\text{F}$ (adjustable)
 - c. The central controller shall have the capability for site floor plans to be uploaded as a background to create a graphics interface.
7. BACnet Server
 - a. The iTM BACnet Server Gateway Option shall be capable of making the VRV central controller work as a BACnet gateway using the BACnet/IP protocol. The iTM BACnet Server Gateway Option shall be capable of exposing indoor unit management points as BACnet objects to the BMS.
 - b. The iTM BACnet Server Gateway Option shall allow the following functions:
 - 1) Support Change of Value (COV) notifications.
 - 2) Provide unique virtual BACnet device identification number (ID) for every indoor unit group address.
 - 3) The iTM BACnet Server Gateway Option shall be capable of being configured as a foreign device. It shall be capable of communicating across BACnet Broadcast Management Devices (BBMD) in different subnet networks.
 - c. In addition to the standard BACnet VRF points, the Building Management System shall monitor and/or control the following BACnet objects for indoor units:
 - 1) Occupancy Mode : Unoccupied, Occupied, Standby
 - 2) Cooling and heating setpoints during occupied and unoccupied modes.
 - d. The Building Management System may choose to monitor and control the following BACnet objects linked to iTM control logic:
 - 1) Enable/Disable iTM Schedule operation.
 - 2) Enable/Disable iTM Auto Changeover Operation.
 - 3) Set Timed Override Minutes - Monitor and configure timer extension for the indoor unit on iTM (30, 60, 90, 120, 150, 180 minutes)

- 4) System forced off - Enable/Disable all emergency stop programs that are registered on the iTM.
 - e. The BMS shall have the ability to utilize scheduling functions on the iTouch Manager.
 - f. The BMS shall have the ability to utilize automatic changeover function on the iTouch Manager, removing the need to program automatic changeover sequences on the BMS.
 - g. VRF manufacturer shall commission the BACnet server. BMS contractor shall provide VRF manufacturer with static IP address and instance number for commissioning. IP connection shall be by BMS contractor.
 - h. All programming for monitoring and control of VRF system via the BACnet server shall be by BMS contractor, as per the Sequence of Operation.
8. Electrical
- a. Independent electrical power for fan coils and branch selector boxes shall be 208/230 volts, 1 phase, 60 hertz. The unit shall be capable of operating within the limits of 187 volts to 253 volts.
 - b. Unless limited by local electrical codes and standards, multiple fan coils and branch selector boxes can be connected to the same breaker. Field provided individual disconnect switches for each fan coil are required.
 - c. Electrical power for condensing units shall be 208/230 volts, 3 phase, 60 hertz. The unit shall be capable of operating within the limits of 187 volts to 253 volts.
 - d. The control voltage between the indoor and outdoor unit shall be 16VDC. The control wiring shall be communication type stranded non-shielded 18-2 AWG.
 - e. Control wiring shall be installed in a daisy chain configuration between all VRF components as per Manufacturer.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Units shall be stored and handled according to the manufacturer's recommendations. Units shall be kept clean and isolated from dust and debris.
- B. Contractor shall inspect all equipment upon delivery and notify shipping company and manufacturer immediately of any damage.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install condensing units on a flat surface level within 1/8 inch, and elevated a minimum of 18" from ground or roof surface. Provide intermediate supports as recommended by the equipment manufacturer.
- B. Provide all necessary control wiring as recommended by the manufacturer.

- C. High/low pressure gas line, liquid, and suction lines must be individually insulated between the outdoor and indoor units.
- D. Contact DXS (978-977-9911) prior to installation to review and confirm piping layout and lengths.
- E. Use refrigeration best practice to allow pipes to expand and contract freely. Review manufacturer installation instructions to ensure expansion joints are properly designed.
- F. Pressure test ALL systems to 550 PSI after system was vacuumed and held to below 500 microns for at least one hour. Review manufacturer installation instructions for proper pressure test procedures.

END OF SECTION 238127

Electrical Specifications

ELECTRICAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

<u>Division 26</u>	<u>Title</u>
260500	Common Work Results for Electrical
260519	Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables (600V-Copper Only)
260526	Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems
260529	Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems
260533	Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Work
260543	Underground Ducts and Utility Structures
260548	Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems
260553	Identification for Electrical Systems
261216	Low-Voltage Transformers
262416	Panelboards
262420	Mechanical Electrical Requirements
262726	Wiring Devices
262813	Fuses
262816	Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers
263213	Engine Generator
263623	Automatic Transfer Switches <u>(For Branch Ave. Only)</u>

SECTION 260500

COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR ELECTRICAL

PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS (Read these DIVISIONS carefully. For purposes of bidding, assume that all work of the DIVISION referenced is to be performed under that DIVISION unless specifically indicated therein to be performed under the ELECTRICAL DIVISION. Coordinate with all divisions to ensure a complete installation)
- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including AIA A201 and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
 - B. Temporary wiring and rental generator by the Electrical Contractor.
 - C. Cutting, patching and related painting by the Electrical Contractor.
 - D. Excavation and backfilling by the Electrical Contractor.
 - E. Concrete by the Electrical Contractor.
 - F. Access panels by the Electrical Contractor.
 - G. Temperature controls, temperature control wiring, interlock wiring, and boiler control wiring (except as indicated on the electrical drawings) - see DIVISION 23.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Work that applies to all sections of DIVISION 26.
 - 2. Temporary electrical wiring.
 - 3. Concrete pads.
 - 4. Electrical equipment coordination and installation.
 - 5. Sleeves for raceways and cables.
 - 6. Sleeve seals.
 - 7. Grout.
 - 8. Common electrical installation requirements.
- 1.3 DEFINITIONS
- A. Provide: Furnish and install.
 - B. Wiring: Wire, raceways, boxes and fittings.
 - C. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene-terpolymer rubber.
 - D. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For sleeve seals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. Do all wiring and provide all equipment in accordance with the prevailing issue of the National Electrical Code, State Building Code, State Fire Code, OSHA and any additional local rules or requirements.
- C. Obtain and pay for all necessary permits, certificates, etc. Present satisfactory proof of final inspection and approval by all inspection authorities.
- D. Consider the following Industry Standards as minimum requirements for all materials, equipment and systems where such standards are established for materials in question:
 - 1. National Board of Fire Underwriters
 - 2. National Electrical Manufacturers Association
 - 3. National Fire Protection Association
 - 4. Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers
 - 5. Local Electric Utility Company
 - 6. Local Telephone Company
 - 7. A nationally recognized testing laboratory (UL, ETL, etc.)
 - 8. Factory Mutual
 - 9. Americans with Disabilities Act
- E. Where applicable, this installation shall comply with the following NECA (National Electrical Contractors Association) "National Electrical Installation Standards." Except, if there is a conflict between this specification and these standards, the requirements of this specification shall prevail.

1. NECA 1-2000 2. NECA 101-2001 3. NECA/AA 104-2000 4. NECA 400-1998 5. NECA/EGSA 404-2000 6. NECA/IESNA 500-1998 7. NECA/IESNA 501-2000 8. NECA/IESNA 502-1999	- Standard Practices for Good Workmanship in Electrical Contracting - Standard for Installing Steel Conduit (Rigid, EMT) - Recommended Practice for Installing Aluminum Building Wire and Cable - Recommended Practice for Installing and Maintaining Switchboards - Recommended Practice for Installing Generator Sets - Recommended Practice for Installing Indoor Commercial Lighting Systems - Recommended Practice for Installing Exterior Lighting Systems - Recommended Practice for Installing Industrial Lighting Systems
--	---

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Comply with NFPA 70E.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate arrangement, mounting, and support of electrical equipment:
 - 1. To allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights that reduce headroom are indicated.
 - 2. To provide for ease of disconnecting the equipment with minimum interference to other installations.
 - 3. To allow right of way for piping and conduit installed at required slope.
 - 4. So connecting raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, and busways will be clear of obstructions and of the working and access space of other equipment.
- B. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in cast-in-place concrete, masonry walls, and other structural components as they are constructed.
- C. Coordinate location of access panels and doors for electrical items that are behind finished surfaces or otherwise concealed. Access doors and panels are specified in Division 08 Section "Access Doors and Frames."
- D. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 07.
- E. Sequence, coordinate, and integrate installing electrical materials and equipment for efficient flow of the Work. Coordinate installing large equipment that requires positioning before closing in the building.
- F. Coordinate electrical service connections to components furnished by utility companies.

1.8 TEMPORARY ELECTRICAL WIRING:

- A. Provide temporary electrical wiring and rental generator with all required fuel to support the service upgrade at Branch Ave and the replacement of the existing generators at both Branch Ave. and North Main locations, as required.
- B. Conform to all codes and regulations.
- C. Completely remove temporary wiring system, upon completion of construction.

1.9 CHANGE ORDERS/PROPOSAL REQUESTS:

- A. During the course of construction, changes in the work may occur. When a significant change is to be made, a Proposal Request will be issued.
- B. Provide a complete cost breakdown when responding to each Proposal Request.
- C. Each item of work to be priced separately.
- D. Each line item to be broken down including quantities and listing separately labor and material.
- E. Both credits and extras shall be separately and clearly quantified.
- F. Allowances for overhead and profit shall be as listed in the supplementary conditions.

- G. If you become aware of a field condition, code requirement, error, or omission that you feel should result in a change to the work, please contact the Engineer for discussion. The Engineer may be able to clarify the situation and avoid unnecessary paperwork.
- H. It is recognized that the Owner benefits when the construction process is a cooperative effort instead of an adversarial relationship. Reasonable give-and-take allows the construction process to move smoothly. Your efforts in this regard will be appreciated by all parties.

1.10 PACKAGED PRICES:

- A. It is in the facility owner's interest, that all bidders receive the best possible quotes on all materials during bidding so that any savings can result in a lower bid price. It is the policy of this Engineer not to specify brands that will result in "packaged" prices. Therefore, manufacturers' representatives are hereby notified that "packaged prices" are prohibited on this project. Upon request, suppliers are to provide bidders with complete material breakdown including each lighting fixture, system, component of system, each piece of equipment, etc. In keeping with this policy, Contractors are hereby cautioned not to anticipate deep discounts after the contract is awarded.

1.11 INSPECTIONS/SITE OBSERVATIONS

- A. The authority having jurisdiction (usually the Municipal Electrical Inspector) shall be notified at periodic intervals that an inspection is requested. Inspections shall be requested at points of progress, meeting the approval of the inspector and as a minimum include the following:
 - 1. Prior to enclosing walls.
 - 2. Prior to enclosing ceilings.
 - 3. Prior to installation of panel/switchgear trims/covers.
 - 4. For observation of connections and grounding at switchboards, transformers and generators.
- B. Do not cover the work before the Engineer has had a chance to observe it in completed form. The electrical foreman shall request a meeting with the Engineer within 10 days after the start of electrical construction to assure that there is agreement on the scope of work and to answer questions.
- C. The electrical foreman shall provide assistance to the Engineer during site observations:
 - 1. Describe the progress of the electrical work in detail.
 - 2. Accompany the Engineer on his tour of the site, upon request.
 - 3. Provide use of a suitable ladder, scaffolding or bucket truck to observe the work, upon request.
 - 4. Remove ceiling tiles, panel trims, junction box covers, etc. for observation of the work, upon request.
 - 5. Provide use of project drawings, specifications and shop drawings.

1.12 GUARANTEES/WARRANTIES:

- A. See other portions of the Project Manual for details on Guarantees and Warranties. However, minimum shall be one year from date of acceptance by the Engineer.

- B. The Owner reserves the right to make appropriate modifications or extensions of systems and equipment furnished under this contract during the guarantee/warranty period without "voiding" or modifying the guarantee/warranty of equipment and wiring installed under this contract. If manufacturer voids guarantee, it shall not relieve this contractor of his responsibilities for guarantee/warranty period.

1.13 MISCELLANEOUS

- A. Provide all systems complete. Drawings and Specifications form complementary requirements; provide work specified and not shown, and work shown and not specified as though explicitly required by both.
- B. Although work is not specifically shown or specified, provide supplementary or miscellaneous items, appurtenances, devices and materials obviously necessary for a sound, secure and complete installation.
- C. All wiring and connections shall be executed with associated circuit de-energized.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS - General:

- A. All materials and equipment shall be new unless specifically stated otherwise.
- B. Materials and equipment shall be suitable for their intended use and for the environment in which they are installed. For example, equipment located outside shall be weatherproof and constructed of materials that will not rust. This includes brackets, screws, etc.
- C. Coordinate all dimensions to make sure that boxes, raceways, equipment, fixtures, etc., fit properly in the finished construction. If special provisions, such as shallow boxes, are required, they shall be provided at no increase in contract price, regardless of catalog numbers listed in contract documents or on shop drawings.
- D. As it is not practical to enumerate in these specifications (or show on the drawings) all details of fittings and accessory equipment required for proper operation of the various electrical systems herein described, it is understood that they will be supplied without extra compensation. Provide all fittings, terminations, relays, components of panels and equipment, etc., needed for the best performance possible at the present state-of-the-art.

2.2 SLEEVES FOR RACEWAYS AND CABLES

- A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.
- B. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe", equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings: Galvanized sheet steel.

1. Minimum Metal Thickness:

- a. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches (1270 mm) and no side more than 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.052 inch (1.3 mm).
- b. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter equal to, or more than, 50 inches (1270 mm) and 1 or more sides equal to, or more than, 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.138 inch (3.5 mm).

2.3 SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:
 - a. Tyco/RayChem.
 - b. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - c. Calpico, Inc.
 - d. Metraflex Co.
 - e. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
 - f. Equal approved by Engineer.
 2. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of cable or conduit. Include type and number required for material and size of raceway or cable.
 3. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel. Include two for each sealing element.
 4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

2.4 GROUT

- A. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive, non-staining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 COMMON REQUIREMENTS FOR ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Materials and Components: Install level, plumb, and parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Measure indicated mounting heights to bottom of unit for suspended items and to center of unit for wall-mounting items.
- D. Headroom Maintenance: If mounting heights or other location criteria are not indicated, arrange and install components and equipment to provide maximum possible headroom consistent with these requirements.
- E. Equipment: Install to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components of both electrical equipment and other nearby installations. Connect in such a way as to facilitate future disconnecting with minimum interference with other items in the vicinity.
- F. Right of Way: Give to piping systems installed at a required slope.
- G. Record of Addenda and Change Orders: To avoid overlooking addenda and change order modifications, mark all changes on all copies of drawings and specifications, in a manner acceptable to the Engineer. One method of accomplishing this is to make copies and tape them on the back of the preceding page (tape all edges). Also, circle the changed area and note: see addenda #1, etc. If whole pages or sheets change, either remove the superseded document or put a bold "X" through it.

- H. Record Drawings: Owner's record drawings shall be updated as the project progresses. Maintain documents in a safe, dry location. Indicate clearly and accurately any changes necessitated by field conditions and dimension all raceways built into or under concrete slabs or buried under ground. Contractor to prepare as-built drawings in CAD format at contractor's expense. Contract drawings in CAD format to be furnished to contractor at no cost to contractor. Contractor to provide two compact discs and two hard copies of final as-built drawings.
- I. Operating Instructions and Manuals: Provide the Owner or his representative with complete operating instructions by qualified personnel of all electrical systems. Provide three (3) bound sets (indexed and bound in three sturdy three-ring binders) of operating and maintenance instructions of all electrical systems employed and all shop drawings.
- J. Letter of Confirmation: Include in the above manuals a letter confirming that the following items have been completed. Provide written receipt signed by the Owner or his representative indicating that the first 4 items listed below have been received.
 - 1. The number of circuit breaker locks called for have been provided.
 - 2. Keys have been provided for all locked electrical equipment.
 - 3. The provisions of the "Operating Instructions and Manuals" paragraph of these specifications have been met.
 - 4. Spare fuses have been provided.
 - 5. Identification is complete and in accordance with these specifications.
 - 6. As-built electrical drawings have been completed and submitted.
 - 7. All tests are complete and in accordance with these specifications.
 - 8. All required shop drawings have been submitted and approved.
 - 9. The entire installation has been accepted by all authorities.

3.2 SEQUENCE AND BALANCE:

- A. Maintain correct phase sequence of all feeders and circuits by establishing phase identification and maintaining correct relationship throughout the system. Provide line balance within 10% of normal loads.

3.3 LAYOUTS

- A. The electrical system layouts indicated are generally diagrammatic and locations of outlets and equipment are approximate only; govern exact routing of wiring and locations of outlets and equipment by structural conditions and obstructions. This is not to be construed to permit redesigning systems. Interconnect as shown.
- B. Locate all equipment requiring maintenance and operation so that it will be readily accessible. The right is reserved to make any reasonable change in location of outlets and equipment prior to roughing-in without involving additional expense. This may involve slightly longer wiring runs, longer stems, additional mounting provisions, etc. Allow for this in your bid because additional compensation will not be provided. Items not specifically located on the plans shall (for the purposes of bidding) be assumed to be in the farthest, most difficult location. Exact location to be as directed in the field.

3.4 ELECTRICAL SERVICE: (120/208) (For Branch Ave. Only)

- A. Provide complete electrical service conforming to all requirements of the local electrical utility company, municipality and state.

- B. Service to be as indicated on the drawings.
- C. Provide connectors for secondary terminations and torque as directed by electric utility company.
- D. Pay all power company charges related to providing service.
- E. Electric utility company to provide the following: primary cable, transformers, meters and current transformers.
- F. Service voltage to be 120/208 volts, 3 phase, 4 wire.
- G. Prior to start of construction, coordinate service with the electric utility company,

Contact _____ of

RI Energy
280 Melrose Street
Providence, RI 02901
(401) 784-4000

3.5 Conform to all requirements of the local electrical utility company, municipality and state

3.6 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Electrical penetrations occur when raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, or busways penetrate concrete slabs, concrete or masonry walls, or fire-rated floor and wall assemblies.
- B. Concrete Slabs and Walls: Install sleeves for penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of slabs and walls.
- C. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
- D. Rectangular Sleeve Minimum Metal Thickness:
 - 1. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches (1270 mm) and no side greater than 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.052 inch (1.3 mm).
 - 2. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter equal to, or greater than, 50 inches (1270 mm) and 1 or more sides equal to, or greater than, 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.138 inch (3.5 mm).
- E. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.
- F. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls.
- G. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level.
- H. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable (unless sleeve seal is to be installed), unless seismic criteria require different clearance, or indicated otherwise.

- I. Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry, and with approved joint compound for gypsum board assemblies.
 - 1. Promptly pack grout solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect grout while curing.
- J. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants".
- K. Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at raceway and cable penetrations. Install sleeves and seal raceway and cable penetration sleeves with firestop materials. Comply with firestopping requirements in Division 07.
- L. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
- M. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel or cast-iron pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- N. Underground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between raceway or cable and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

3.7 SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION

- A. Install to seal exterior wall penetrations.
- B. Use type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

3.8 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Apply firestopping to penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies for electrical installations to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly. Firestopping materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 07.
- B. Penetrations through exterior surfaces shall be made watertight.
- C. Floor boxes, fed from floor below, shall be fire-rated, poke-through type with UL labeled fire rating to match floor rating.

3.9 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. This trade (specification section) is responsible for its respective cutting and patching.
- B. Do not endanger any work by cutting or altering work or any part of it.

- C. Do not cut or alter work of another Contractor without written consent of the Engineer.
- D. Prior to cutting which affects structural safety of project, or work of another Contractor, submit written notice to the Engineer, requesting consent to proceed with cutting.
- E. Perform all work of fitting, adjustment, cutting, patching, finishing and restoration to perfectly match the quality as specified throughout these specifications. Painting shall match and be feathered into adjacent surfaces.
- F. Provide painting for related work.

3.10 CORE DRILLING:

- A. All holes through masonry surfaces must be "core drilled". This trade (specification section) is responsible for its respective core drilling, if any.
- B. Do not endanger any work by drilling or altering work or any part of it.
- C. Do not drill or alter work of another Contractor without written consent of the Engineer.
- D. Prior to drilling which affects structural safety of project, or work of another Contractor, submit written notice to the Engineer, requesting consent to proceed with cutting.
- E. Perform all work of core drilling to perfectly match the quality as specified throughout these specifications.

3.11 ACCESS PANELS:

- A. This trade (specification section) is responsible for determining the number of access panels required for existing and new electrical work (including one under each above ceiling thermodetector) and furnishing them to the mason or drywall contractor for installation. See DIVISION 8.

3.12 CLEANING, PAINTING AND REFINISHING:

- A. Paint related cutting and patching work.
- B. Thoroughly clean all new electrical equipment, devices and enclosures upon completion of all work.
- C. Refinish any new electrical equipment whose finish is damaged or rusted, as determined by the Engineer.

END OF SECTION 260500

SECTION 260526

GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including AIA A201 and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes methods and materials for grounding systems and equipment, plus the following special applications:
 - 1. Underground distribution grounding.
 - 2. Common ground bonding with lightning protection system.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Other Informational Submittals: Plans showing dimensioned as-built locations of grounding features specified in Part 3 "Field Quality Control" Article, including the following:
 - 1. Ground rods.
 - 2. Grounding arrangements and connections for separately derived systems.
 - 3. Grounding for sensitive electronic equipment.
- C. Qualification Data: For testing agency and testing agency's field supervisor.
- D. Field quality-control test reports.
- E. Operation and Maintenance Data: For grounding to include the following in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals:
 - 1. Instructions for periodic testing and inspection of grounding features at ground rings and grounding connections for separately derived systems, based on NETA MTS.
 - a. Tests shall be to determine if ground resistance or impedance values remain within specified maximums, and instructions shall recommend corrective action if they do not.
 - b. Include recommended testing intervals.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

- B. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONDUCTORS

- A. Insulated Conductors: Copper wire or cable, insulated for 600 V unless otherwise required by applicable Code or authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Bare Copper Conductors:
 - 1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.
 - 2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
 - 3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B 33.
 - 4. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmil, 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, 1/4 inch (6 mm) in diameter.
 - 5. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
 - 6. Bonding Jumper: Copper tape, braided conductors, terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) wide and 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick.
 - 7. Tinned Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors, terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) wide and 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick.
- C. Bare Grounding Conductor and Conductor Protector for Wood Poles:
 - 1. No. 4 AWG minimum, soft-drawn copper.
 - 2. Conductor Protector: Half-round PVC or wood molding. If wood, use pressure-treated fir or cypress or cedar.
- D. Grounding Bus: Rectangular bars of annealed copper, 1/4 by 2 inches (6 by 50 mm) in cross section, unless otherwise indicated; with insulators.

2.2 CONNECTORS

- A. Listed and labeled by a nationally recognized testing laboratory acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for applications in which used, and for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected.
- B. Bolted Connectors for Conductors and Pipes: Copper or copper alloy, bolted pressure-type, with at least two bolts.
 - 1. Pipe Connectors: Clamp type, sized for pipe.
- C. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.

2.3 GROUNDING ELECTRODES

- A. Ground Rods: Copper-clad steel, sectional type; 5/8 in diameter by 96 inches (16 by 2400 mm).

- B. Chemical-Enhanced Grounding Electrodes: Copper tube, straight or L-shaped, charged with nonhazardous electrolytic chemical salts.
 - 1. Termination: Factory-attached No. 4/0 AWG bare conductor at least 48 inches (1200 mm) long.
 - 2. Backfill Material: Electrode manufacturer's recommended material.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATIONS

- A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 8 AWG and smaller, and stranded conductors for No. 6 AWG and larger, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Underground Grounding Conductors: Install bare tinned-copper conductor, No. 3/0 WG minimum.
 - 1. Bury at least 24 inches (600 mm) below grade.
 - 2. Duct-Bank Grounding Conductor: Bury 12 inches (300 mm) above duct bank when indicated as part of duct-bank installation.
- C. Isolated Grounding Conductors: Green-colored insulation with continuous yellow stripe. On feeders with isolated ground, identify grounding conductor where visible to normal inspection, with alternating bands of green and yellow tape, with at least three bands of green and two bands of yellow.
- D. Grounding Bus: Install as indicated on plans.
 - 1. Install bus on insulated spacers 1 inch (25 mm), minimum, from wall 6 inches (150 mm) above finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Where indicated on both sides of doorways, route bus up to top of door frame, across top of doorway, down to specified height above floor, and connect to horizontal bus.
- E. Conductor Terminations and Connections:
 - 1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
 - 2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors and as otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

3.2 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING

- A. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with all feeders and branch circuits.
- B. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with the following items, in addition to those required by NFPA 70:
 - 1. Feeders and branch circuits.
 - 2. Lighting circuits.
 - 3. Receptacle circuits.

4. Single-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
 5. Three-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
 6. Flexible raceway runs.
 7. Armored and metal-clad cable runs.
 8. Computer and Rack-Mounted Electronic Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor in branch-circuit runs from equipment-area power panels and power-distribution units.
- C. Air-Duct Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor to duct-mounted electrical devices operating at 120 V and more, including air cleaners, heaters, dampers, humidifiers, and other duct electrical equipment. Bond conductor to each unit and to air duct and connected metallic piping.
- D. Water Heater, Heat-Tracing, and Antifrost Heating Cables: Install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor to each electric water heater and heat-tracing cable. Bond conductor to heater units, piping, connected equipment, and components.
- E. Signal and Communication Equipment: For telephone, alarm, voice and data, and other communication equipment, provide No. 4 AWG minimum insulated grounding conductor in raceway from grounding electrode system to each service location, terminal cabinet, wiring closet, and central equipment location.
1. Service and Central Equipment Locations and Wiring Closets: Terminate grounding conductor on a 1/4-by-2-by-12-inch (6-by-50-by-300-mm) grounding bus.
 2. Terminal Cabinets: Terminate grounding conductor on cabinet grounding terminal.
- F. Metal Poles Supporting Outdoor Lighting Fixtures: Install grounding electrode and a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor in addition to grounding conductor installed with branch-circuit conductors.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible, unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.
- B. Common Ground Bonding with Lightning Protection System: Comply with NFPA 780 and UL 96 when interconnecting with lightning protection system. Bond electrical power system ground directly to lightning protection system grounding conductor at closest point to electrical service grounding electrode. Use bonding conductor sized the same as the system grounding electrode conductor, and install in conduit.
- C. Ground Rods: Drive rods until tops are 2 inches (50 mm) below finished floor or final grade, unless otherwise indicated.
1. Interconnect ground rods with grounding electrode conductor below grade and as otherwise indicated. Make connections without exposing steel or damaging coating, if any.

2. For grounding electrode system, install at least three rods (or ufer and two rods) spaced at least one-rod length from each other and located at least the same distance from other grounding electrodes, and connect to the service grounding electrode conductor.
- D. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance, except where routed through short lengths of conduit.
1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.
 2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.
 3. Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations, but if a disconnect-type connection is required, use a bolted clamp.
- E. Grounding and Bonding for Piping:
1. Metal Water Service Pipe: Install insulated copper grounding conductors, in conduit, from building's main service equipment, or grounding bus, to main metal water service entrances to building. Connect grounding conductors to main metal water service pipes, using a bolted clamp connector or by bolting a lug-type connector to a pipe flange, using one of the lug bolts of the flange. Where a dielectric main water fitting is installed, connect grounding conductor on street side of fitting. Bond metal grounding conductor conduit or sleeve to conductor at each end.
 2. Water Meter Piping: Use braided-type bonding jumpers to electrically bypass water meters. Connect to pipe with a bolted connector.
 3. Bond each aboveground portion of gas piping system downstream from equipment shutoff valve.
- F. Bonding Interior Metal Ducts: Bond metal air ducts to equipment grounding conductors of associated fans, blowers, electric heaters, and air cleaners. Install bonding jumper to bond across flexible duct connections to achieve continuity.
- G. Grounding for Steel Building Structure: Install a driven ground rod at base of each corner column and at intermediate exterior columns at distances not more than 60 feet (18 m) apart.
- H. Ufer Ground (Concrete-Encased Grounding Electrode) if available: Fabricate according to NFPA 70, using a minimum of 20 feet (6 m) of bare copper conductor not smaller than No. 1/0 AWG.
1. If concrete foundation is less than 20 feet (6 m) long, coil excess conductor within base of foundation.
 2. Bond grounding conductor to reinforcing steel in at least four locations and to anchor bolts. Extend grounding conductor below grade and connect to building grounding grid or to grounding electrode external to concrete.
- 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Perform the following tests and inspections and prepare test reports:

1. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuits have been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
 2. Test completed grounding system at each location where a maximum ground-resistance level is specified, at service disconnect enclosure grounding terminal, and at individual ground rods. Make tests at ground rods before any conductors are connected.
 - a. Measure ground resistance not less than two full days after last trace of precipitation and without soil being moistened by any means other than natural drainage or seepage and without chemical treatment or other artificial means of reducing natural ground resistance.
 - b. Perform tests by fall-of-potential method according to IEEE 81.
 3. Prepare dimensioned drawings locating each ground rod and ground rod assembly, and other grounding electrodes. Identify each by letter in alphabetical order and key to the record of tests and observations. Include the number of rods driven and their depth at each location and include observations of weather and other phenomena that may affect test results. Describe measures taken to improve test results.
- B. Report measured ground resistances that exceed the following values:
1. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity 500 kVA and Less: 10 ohms.
 2. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity 500 to 1000 kVA: 5 ohms.
 3. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity More Than 1000 kVA: 3 ohms.
 4. Power Distribution Units or Panelboards Serving Electronic Equipment: 3 ohms.
 5. Substations and Pad-Mounted Equipment: 5 ohms.
 6. Manhole Grounds: 10 ohms.
- C. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values, notify Engineer promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

END OF SECTION 260526

SECTION 260529

HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including AIA A201 and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems.
 - 2. Construction requirements for concrete bases.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems" for products and installation requirements necessary for compliance with seismic criteria.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EMT: Electrical metallic tubing.
- B. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.
- C. RMC: Rigid metal conduit.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design supports for multiple raceways, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Design supports for multiple raceways capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems and its contents.
- C. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
- D. Rated Strength: Adequate in tension, shear, and pullout force to resist maximum loads calculated or imposed for this Project, with a minimum structural safety factor of five times the applied force.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 - 1. Metallic slotted support systems.
 - 2. Nonmetallic slotted support systems.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following:
 - 1. Trapeze hangers. Include Product Data for components.
 - 2. Steel slotted channel systems. Include Product Data for components.
 - 3. Nonmetallic slotted channel systems. Include Product Data for components.
 - 4. Equipment supports.
- C. Welding certificates.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.
- B. Coordinate installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations. These items are specified in Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

- A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Flange edges turned toward web, and 9/16-inch- (14-mm-) diameter slotted holes at a maximum of 2 inches (50 mm) o.c., in webs. Strength rating to suit structural loading. Comply with MFMA-4, factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
 - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:
 - a. Allied Tube & Conduit.
 - b. Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
 - c. ERICO International Corporation.
 - d. GS Metals Corp.
 - e. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
 - f. Unistrut; Tyco International, Ltd.
 - g. Wesanco, Inc.

- h. Equal approved by Engineer.
- 2. Metallic Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-4.
 - 3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Manufacturer's standard PVC, polyurethane, or polyester coating applied according to MFMA-4.
 - 4. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-4.
 - 5. Channel Dimensions: Selected for applicable load criteria.
- B. Nonmetallic Slotted Support Systems: Structural-grade, factory-formed, glass-fiber-resin channels and angles with 9/16-inch- (14-mm-) diameter holes at a maximum of 8 inches (200 mm) o.c., in at least 1 surface.
 - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:
 - a. Allied Tube & Conduit.
 - b. Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
 - c. Fabco Plastics Wholesale Limited.
 - d. Seasafe, Inc.
 - e. Equal approved by Engineer.
 - 2. Fittings and Accessories: Products of channel and angle manufacturer and designed for use with those items.
 - 3. Fitting and Accessory Materials: Same as channels and angles, except metal items may be stainless steel.
 - 4. Rated Strength: Selected to suit applicable load criteria.
- C. Raceway and Cable Supports: Manufactured clevis hangers, riser clamps, straps, threaded C-clamps with retainers, ceiling trapeze hangers, wall brackets, and spring-steel clamps or click-type hangers. As described in NECA 1 and NECA 101.
- D. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: Steel hangers, clamps, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.
- E. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for non-armored electrical conductors or cables in riser conduits. Plugs shall have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body shall be malleable iron with hot-dip galvanized finish.
- F. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- G. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:

1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, steel, or wood, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
 - a. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:
 - 1) Hilti Inc.
 - 2) ITW Ramset/Red Head; a division of Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
 - 3) MKT Fastening, LLC.
 - 4) Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Inc.; Masterset Fastening Systems Unit.
 - 5) Equal approved by Engineer.
 2. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated or stainless steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials in which used.
 - a. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:
 - 1) Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
 - 2) Empire Tool and Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - 3) Hilti Inc.
 - 4) ITW Ramset/Red Head; a division of Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
 - 5) MKT Fastening, LLC.
 - 6) Equal approved by Engineer.
 3. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units similar to MSS Type 18; complying with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.
 4. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58, type suitable for attached structural element.
 5. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM A 325.
 6. Toggle Bolts: All-steel springhead type.
 7. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.
- 2.2 FABRICATED METAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORT ASSEMBLIES
- A. Description: Welded or bolted, structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions of supported equipment.
 - B. Materials: Comply with requirements in Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for steel shapes and plates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for application of hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems, except if requirements in this Section are stricter.

- B. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceway: Space supports for EMT, IMC, and RMC as scheduled in NECA 1, where its Table 1 lists maximum spacings less than stated in NFPA 70. Minimum rod size shall be 1/4 inch (6 mm) in diameter.
- C. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least 25 percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.
 - 1. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with single-bolt conduit clamps using spring friction action for retention in support channel.
- D. Spring-steel clamps designed for supporting single conduits without bolts may be used for 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) and smaller raceways serving branch circuits and communication systems above suspended ceilings and for fastening raceways to trapeze supports.

3.2 SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except as specified in this Article.
- B. Support individual horizontal single raceways with separate, malleable-iron pipe hangers or clamps except use spring-steel fasteners for 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) and smaller single raceways above suspended ceilings and for fastening raceways to slotted channel and angle supports.
- C. Support parallel runs of horizontal raceways together on trapeze- or bracket-type hangers.
- D. Raceway Support Methods: In addition to methods described in NECA 1, EMT, IMC, and RMC may be supported by openings through structure members, as permitted in NFPA 70.
- E. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads (+25 percent minimum) within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb (90 kg).
- F. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten electrical items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:
 - 1. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.
 - 2. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
 - 3. To Masonry: Approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.
 - 4. To Existing Concrete: Expansion anchor fasteners.
 - 5. Instead of expansion anchors, powder-actuated driven threaded studs provided with lock washers and nuts may be used in existing standard-weight concrete 4 inches (100 mm) thick or greater. Do not use for anchorage to lightweight-aggregate concrete or for slabs less than 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
 - 6. To Steel: Welded threaded studs complying with AWS D1.1/D1.1M, with lock washers and nuts, or beam clamps (MSS Type 19, 21, 23, 25, or 27) complying with MSS SP-69.

7. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.
 8. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate by means that meet seismic-restraint strength and anchorage requirements.
 9. Fasteners: Select so load applied to each fastener does not exceed 25 percent of its proof-test load.
- G. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid reinforcing bars.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with installation requirements in Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for site-fabricated metal supports.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor electrical materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

3.4 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated but not less than 4 inches (100 mm) larger in both directions than supported unit, and so anchors will be a minimum of 10 bolt diameters from edge of the base.
- B. Use 3000-psi (20.7-MPa, 28-day compressive-strength concrete. Concrete materials, reinforcement, and placement requirements are specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete (Limited Applications)."
- C. Anchor equipment to concrete base.
 1. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 2. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 3. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils (0.05 mm).

- B. Touchup: Comply with requirements in Division 09 painting Sections for cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal.
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 260529

SECTION 260533

RACEWAY AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including AIA A201 and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes raceways, fittings, boxes, enclosures, and cabinets for electrical wiring.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 26 Section "Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems" for exterior ductbanks, manholes, and underground utility construction.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EMT: Electrical metallic tubing.
- B. ENT: Electrical nonmetallic tubing.
- C. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
- D. FMC: Flexible metal conduit.
- E. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.
- F. LFMC: Liquidtight flexible metal conduit.
- G. LFNC: Liquidtight flexible nonmetallic conduit.
- H. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.
- I. RNC: Rigid nonmetallic conduit.
- J. RGS: Rigid galvanized steel conduit.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For surface raceways, wireways, fittings, floor boxes, hinged-cover enclosures, and cabinets.
- B. Shop Drawings: For the following raceway components. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Custom enclosures and cabinets.
 2. For handholes and boxes for underground wiring, including the following:
 - a. Duct entry provisions, including locations and duct sizes.
 - b. Frame and cover design.
 - c. Grounding details.
 - d. Dimensioned locations of cable rack inserts, and pulling-in and lifting irons.
 - e. Joint details.
 - C. Coordination Drawings: Conduit routing plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from installers of the items involved:
 1. Structural members in the paths of conduit groups with common supports.
 2. HVAC and plumbing items and architectural features in the paths of conduit groups with common supports.
 - D. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that enclosures and cabinets and their mounting provisions, including those for internal components, will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems." Include the following:
 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - a. The term "withstand" means "the cabinet or enclosure will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will retain its enclosure characteristics, including its interior accessibility, after the seismic event."
 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
 - E. Qualification Data: For professional engineer and testing agency.
 - F. Source quality-control test reports.
- 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
 - B. Comply with NFPA 70.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL CONDUIT AND TUBING

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:
1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
 2. Alflex Inc.
 3. Allied Tube & Conduit; a Tyco International Ltd. Co.
 4. Anamet Electrical, Inc.; Anaconda Metal Hose.
 5. Electri-Flex Co.
 6. Manhattan/CDT/Cole-Flex.
 7. Maverick Tube Corporation.
 8. O-Z Gedney; a unit of General Signal.
 9. Wheatland Tube Company.
 10. Equal approved by Engineer.
- B. Rigid Steel Conduit: ANSI C80.1.
- C. Aluminum Rigid Conduit: ANSI C80.5.
- D. IMC: ANSI C80.6.
- E. PVC-Coated Steel Conduit: PVC-coated rigid steel conduit.
1. Comply with NEMA RN 1.
 2. Coating Thickness: 0.040 inch (1 mm), minimum.
- F. EMT: ANSI C80.3.
- G. FMC: Zinc-coated steel.
- H. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket.
- I. Fittings for Conduit (Including all Types and Flexible and Liquidtight), EMT, and Cable: NEMA FB 1; listed for type and size raceway with which used, and for application and environment in which installed.
1. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Comply with UL 886.
 2. Fittings for EMT: Steel, set-screw type.
 3. Coating for Fittings for PVC-Coated Conduit: Minimum thickness, 0.040 inch (1 mm), with overlapping sleeves protecting threaded joints.
- J. Joint Compound for Rigid Steel Conduit or IMC: Listed for use in cable connector assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded raceway joints from corrosion and enhance their conductivity.

2.2 NONMETALLIC CONDUIT AND TUBING

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
 2. Anamet Electrical, Inc.; Anaconda Metal Hose.
 3. Arnco Corporation.
 4. CANTEX Inc.
 5. CertainTeed Corp.; Pipe & Plastics Group.
 6. Condux International, Inc.
 7. ElecSYS, Inc.
 8. Electri-Flex Co.
 9. Lamson & Sessions; Carlon Electrical Products.
 10. Manhattan/CDT/Cole-Flex.
 11. RACO; a Hubbell Company.
 12. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
 13. Equal approved by Engineer.
- B. ENT: NEMA TC 13.
- C. RNC: NEMA TC 2, Type EPC-40-PVC, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. LFNC: UL 1660.
- E. Fittings for ENT and RNC: NEMA TC 3; match to conduit or tubing type and material.
- F. Fittings for LFNC: UL 514B.

2.3 OPTICAL FIBER/COMMUNICATIONS CABLE RACEWAY AND FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:
1. Arnco Corporation.
 2. Endot Industries Inc.
 3. IPEX Inc.
 4. Lamson & Sessions; Carlon Electrical Products.
 5. Equal approved by Engineer.
- B. Description: Comply with UL 2024; flexible type, approved for plenum, riser, or general-use installation, as needed.

2.4 METAL WIREWAYS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:

- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Cooper B-Line, Inc.
 - 2. Hoffman.
 - 3. Square D; Schneider Electric.
 - 4. Equal approved by Engineer.
- C. Description: Sheet metal sized and shaped as indicated, NEMA 250, Type 1, 12, or 3R, as indicated or required by environmental conditions.
- D. Fittings and Accessories: Include couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.
- E. Wireway Covers: Hinged type, screw-cover type, or flanged-and-gasketed type, as indicated.
- F. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish.

2.5 NONMETALLIC WIREWAYS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:
 - 1. Hoffman.
 - 2. Lamson & Sessions; Carlon Electrical Products.
 - 3. Equal approved by Engineer.
- B. Description: Fiberglass polyester, extruded and fabricated to size and shape indicated, with no holes or knockouts. Cover is gasketed with oil-resistant gasket material and fastened with captive screws treated for corrosion resistance. Connections are flanged, with stainless-steel screws and oil-resistant gaskets.
- C. Description: PVC plastic, extruded and fabricated to size and shape indicated, with snap-on cover and mechanically coupled connections with plastic fasteners.
- D. Fittings and Accessories: Include couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.

2.6 SURFACE RACEWAYS

- A. Surface Metal Raceways: Galvanized steel with snap-on covers. Manufacturer's standard enamel finish in color selected by Architect.
 - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
- b. Walker Systems, Inc.; Wiremold Company (The).
- c. Wiremold Company (The); Electrical Sales Division.
- d. Equal approved by Engineer.

2.7 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Cooper Crouse-Hinds; Div. of Cooper Industries, Inc.
 2. EGS/Appleton Electric.
 3. Erickson Electrical Equipment Company.
 4. Hoffman.
 5. Hubbell Incorporated; Killark Electric Manufacturing Co. Division.
 6. O-Z/Gedney; a unit of General Signal.
 7. RACO; a Hubbell Company.
 8. Robroy Industries, Inc.; Enclosure Division.
 9. Scott Fetzer Co.; Adalet Division.
 10. Spring City Electrical Manufacturing Company.
 11. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
 12. Walker Systems, Inc.; Wiremold Company (The).
 13. Woodhead, Daniel Company; Woodhead Industries, Inc. Subsidiary.
 14. Equal approved by Engineer.
- B. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: NEMA OS 1.
- C. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: NEMA FB 1, aluminum, Type FD, with gasketed cover.
- D. Nonmetallic Outlet and Device Boxes: NEMA OS 2.
- E. Metal Floor Boxes: Cast metal, fully adjustable, rectangular.
- F. Nonmetallic Floor Boxes: Nonadjustable, round.
- G. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.
- H. Cast-Metal Access, Pull, and Junction Boxes: NEMA FB 1, cast aluminum with gasketed cover.
- I. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch, unless otherwise indicated.
1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
- J. Cabinets:
1. NEMA 250, Type 1, galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
 2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.

3. Key latch to match panelboards.
4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
5. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.

2.8 HANDHOLES AND BOXES FOR EXTERIOR UNDERGROUND WIRING

A. Description: Comply with SCTE 77.

1. Color of Frame and Cover: Green.
2. Configuration: Units shall be designed for flush burial and have open bottom, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure.
4. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
5. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, as indicated for each service.
6. Conduit Entrance Provisions: Conduit-terminating fittings shall mate with entering ducts for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
7. Handholes 12 inches wide by 24 inches long (300 mm wide by 600 mm long) and larger shall have inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons installed before concrete is poured.
8. See drawings for additional information.

B. Polymer-Concrete Handholes and Boxes with Polymer-Concrete Cover: Molded of sand and aggregate, bound together with polymer resin, and reinforced with steel or fiberglass or a combination of the two.

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:
 - a. Armorcast Products Company.
 - b. Carson Industries LLC.
 - c. CDR Systems Corporation.
 - d. NewBasis.
 - e. Equal approved by Engineer.

2.9 SLEEVES FOR RACEWAYS

- A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.
- B. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings: Galvanized sheet steel with minimum 0.052- or 0.138-inch (1.3- or 3.5-mm) thickness as indicated and of length to suit application.
- D. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 07 Section on penetration firestopping.

2.10 SLEEVE SEALS

1. See Section 260500.

2.11 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL FOR UNDERGROUND ENCLOSURES

- A. Handhole and Pull-Box Prototype Test: Test prototypes of handholes and boxes for compliance with SCTE 77. Strength tests shall be for specified tier ratings of products supplied.
 1. Tests of materials shall be performed by an independent testing agency.
 2. Strength tests of complete boxes and covers shall be by either an independent testing agency or manufacturer. A qualified registered professional engineer shall certify tests by manufacturer.
 3. Testing machine pressure gages shall have current calibration certification complying with ISO 9000 and ISO 10012, and traceable to NIST standards.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 RACEWAY APPLICATION

- A. Outdoors: Apply raceway products as specified below, unless otherwise indicated:
 1. Exposed Conduit: Rigid steel conduit.
 2. Concealed Conduit, Aboveground: EMT.
 3. Underground Conduit, over 600 volts: RNC, Type EPC-80-PVC, direct buried.
 4. Underground Conduit, under 600 volts: RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC, direct buried.
 5. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): In dry conditions, use FMC. Use LFMC in damp, wet, or dirty conditions.
 6. Boxes and Enclosures, Aboveground: NEMA 250, Type 3R or 4, as indicated.
 7. Application of Handholes and Boxes for Underground Wiring:
 - a. Handholes and Pull Boxes in Driveway, Parking Lot, and Off-Roadway Locations, Subject to Occasional, Nondeliberate Loading by Heavy Vehicles: Polymer concrete, SCTE 77, Tier 15 structural load rating.
 - b. Handholes and Pull Boxes in Sidewalk and Similar Applications with a Safety Factor for Nondeliberate Loading by Vehicles: Polymer-concrete units, SCTE 77, Tier 8 structural load rating.
 - c. Handholes and Pull Boxes Subject to Light-Duty Pedestrian Traffic Only: Fiberglass-reinforced polyester resin, structurally tested according to SCTE 77 with 3000-lbf (13 345-N) vertical loading.
- B. Comply with the following indoor applications, unless otherwise indicated:
 1. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT.
 2. Exposed and Subject to Physical Damage: Rigid steel conduit. Includes raceways in the following locations:
 - a. Loading dock.
 - b. Corridors used for traffic of mechanized carts, forklifts, and pallet-handling units.

- c. Mechanical rooms.
 - d. Per drawings.
 - 3. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT.
 - 4. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): FMC, except use LFMC in damp, wet, or dirty locations.
 - 5. Damp or Wet Locations: Rigid steel conduit.
 - 6. Raceways for Optical Fiber or Communications Cable in Spaces Used for Environmental Air: EMT.
 - 7. Raceways for Optical Fiber or Communications Cable Risers in Vertical Shafts: EMT.
 - 8. Raceways for Concealed General Purpose Distribution of Optical Fiber or Communications Cable: EMT.
 - 9. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, except use NEMA 250, Type 4, stainless steel in corrosive locations.
- C. Minimum Raceway Size: 3/4-inch (21-mm) trade size.
- D. Raceway Fittings: Compatible with raceways and suitable for use and location.
- 1. Rigid and Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. PVC Externally Coated, Rigid Steel Conduits: Use only fittings listed for use with that material. Patch and seal all joints, nicks, and scrapes in PVC coating after installing conduits and fittings. Use sealant recommended by fitting manufacturer.
- E. Install nonferrous conduit or tubing for circuits operating above 60 Hz. Where aluminum raceways are installed for such circuits and pass through concrete, install in nonmetallic sleeve.
- F. Do not install aluminum conduits in contact with concrete.
- 3.2 INSTALLATION
- A. Comply with NECA 1 for installation requirements applicable to products specified in Part 2 except where requirements on Drawings or in this Article are stricter.
 - B. Keep raceways at least 12 inches (300 mm) away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.
 - C. Complete raceway installation before starting conductor installation.
 - D. Support raceways as specified in Division 26 Section "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."
 - E. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above the finished slab.
 - F. Install no more than the equivalent of three 90-degree bends in any conduit run except for communications conduits, for which fewer bends are allowed.

- G. Conceal conduit and EMT within finished walls, ceilings, and floors, unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Raceways Embedded in Slabs:
 - 1. Run conduit larger than 2-inch (54-mm) trade size, parallel or at right angles to main reinforcement. Where at right angles to reinforcement, place conduit close to slab support.
 - 2. Arrange raceways to cross building expansion joints at right angles; with expansion fittings.
 - 3. Change from Type EPC-40-PVC, to rigid steel conduit before rising above the floor.
- I. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound to threads of raceway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.
- J. Raceway Terminations at Locations Subject to Moisture or Vibration: Use insulating bushings to protect conductors of all sizes.
- K. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb (90-kg) tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches (300 mm) of slack at each end of pull wire.
- L. Raceways for Optical Fiber and Communications Cable: Install raceways, metallic and nonmetallic, rigid and flexible, as follows:
 - 1. 3/4-Inch (19-mm) Trade Size and Smaller: Install raceways in maximum lengths of 50 feet (15 m).
 - 2. 1-Inch (25-mm) Trade Size and Larger: Install raceways in maximum lengths of 75 feet (23 m).
 - 3. Install with a maximum of two 90-degree bends or equivalent for each length of raceway unless Drawings show stricter requirements. Separate lengths with pull or junction boxes or terminations at distribution frames or cabinets where necessary to comply with these requirements.
- M. Install raceway sealing fittings at suitable, approved, and accessible locations and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed raceways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install raceway sealing fittings at the following points:
 - 1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated or heated spaces.
 - 2. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.
- N. Expansion-Joint Fittings for RNC: Install in each run of aboveground conduit that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 30 deg F (17 deg C), and that has straight-run length that exceeds 25 feet (7.6 m).
 - 1. Install expansion-joint fittings for each of the following locations, and provide type and quantity of fittings that accommodate temperature change listed for location:

- a. Outdoor Locations Not Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 125 deg F (70 deg C) temperature change.
 - b. Outdoor Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 155 deg F (86 deg C) temperature change.
 - c. Indoor Spaces: Connected with the Outdoors without Physical Separation: 125 deg F (70 deg C) temperature change.
 - d. Attics: 135 deg F (75 deg C) temperature change.
 2. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.00041 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F (0.06 mm per meter of length of straight run per deg C) of temperature change.
 3. Install each expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected according to manufacturer's written instructions for conditions at specific location at the time of installation.
- O. Flexible Conduit Connections: Use maximum of 72 inches (1830 mm) of flexible conduit for recessed and semi-recessed lighting fixtures, equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors.
1. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations subject.
- P. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall.
- Q. Set metal floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.
- R. Set nonmetallic floor boxes level. Trim after installation to fit flush with finished floor surface.
- ### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND CONDUIT
- A. Direct-Buried Conduit:
1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for conduit. Prepare trench bottom as specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for pipe less than 6 inches (150 mm) in nominal diameter.
 2. Install backfill as specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."
 3. After installing conduit, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point, and work toward end of conduit run, leaving conduit at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Firmly hand tamp backfill around conduit to provide maximum supporting strength. After placing controlled backfill to within 12 inches (300 mm) of finished grade, make final conduit connection at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction as specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."
 4. Install manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through the floor.
 - a. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches (75 mm) of concrete.

- b. For stub-ups at equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of 60 inches (1500 mm) from edge of equipment pad or foundation. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
- 5. Warning Planks: Bury warning planks approximately 12 inches (300 mm) above direct-buried conduits, placing them 24 inches (600 mm) o.c. Align planks along the width and along the centerline of conduit.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND HANDHOLES AND BOXES

- A. Install handholes and boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting conduits to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1/2-inch (12.5-mm) sieve to No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.
- C. Elevation: In paved areas, set so cover surface will be flush with finished grade. Set covers of other enclosures 1 inch (25 mm) above finished grade.
- D. Install handholes and boxes with bottom below the frost line; or 40 inches below grade.
- E. Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated. Select arm lengths to be long enough to provide spare space for future cables, but short enough to preserve adequate working clearances in the enclosure.
- F. Field-cut openings for conduits according to enclosure manufacturer's written instructions. Cut wall of enclosure with a tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.

3.5 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. See Section 260500.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure coatings, finishes, and cabinets are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
 - 1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
 - 2. Repair damage to PVC or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 260533

SECTION 260543

UNDERGROUND DUCTS AND UTILITY STRUCTURES

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Scope of Specification

1. This Section includes underground conduits and ducts, duct banks, pull boxes and handholes, manholes, and other underground utility structures.
2. Products furnished but not installed under this Section include pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and insulators.
3. See drawings for additional information.
4. Seal all site conduits at the exterior and interior locations with Polywater Foam Duct Sealant specific for the application.

B. Related Specifications

1. Drawing and general provisions of the Contract, including AIA A201 and Division 1 Specifications Sections, apply to this Section.
2. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:
 - a Division 31 Section for general requirements for excavation, backfill and related items for ducts, manholes, and handholes.
 - b 033000 – “Cast-In-Place Concrete” for cast-in-place concrete requirements.
 - c Division 7 Section for dampproofing of manholes and handholes.

C. Definitions

1. Duct: Electrical conduit and other raceway, either metallic or nonmetallic, used underground, embedded in earth or concrete.
2. Duct Bank: 2 or more conduits or other raceway installed underground in the same trench or concrete envelope.
3. Handhole: An underground junction box in a duct or duct bank.
4. Manhole: An underground utility structure, large enough for a person to enter, connecting with ducts to afford facilities for installing and maintaining cables.
5. Vault: An underground utility structure, large enough for a person to enter, connecting with ducts to afford facilities for installing, operating, and maintaining equipment and wiring.

D. Applicable Standards

1. NFPA 70 – “National Electric Code”
2. UL 1990 – “Underground Conduit, Non Metallic”
3. ASTM C 858 – “Underground Precast Concrete Utility Structures”
4. ASTM C1037 – “Inspection of Underground Precast Concrete Utility”

5. ASTM C857- "Minimum Structural Design, Loading for Underground Precast Concrete Utility structures"
6. Conduit Standards listing in Section 2.2

E. Submittals

1. General: Submit the following according to Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.
2. Product data for metal accessories for manholes and handholes, conduit and duct, duct bank materials, and miscellaneous components.
3. Shop drawings showing details and design calculations for precast manholes and handholes, including reinforcing steel. Stamp drawings with seal of registered professional structural engineer.
4. Certificate for concrete and steel used in underground precast concrete utility structures, according to ASTM C 858.
5. Inspection report for factory inspections, according to ASTM C 1037.
6. Coordination drawings showing duct profiles and coordination with other utilities and underground structures. Include plans and sections drawn to accurate scale.
7. Qualification data for firms and persons specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include list of completed projects with project names, addresses, names of Architect and Owner, and other information specified.
8. Field test reports indicating and interpreting test results relative to compliance with performance requirements of "Field Quality Control" Article in Part 3 of this Section.
9. Record Documents: Show dimensioned locations of underground ducts, handholes, and manholes.

F. Quality Assurance

1. Manufacturer Qualifications: Firm experienced in manufacturing underground precast concrete utility structures of types and sizes required and similar to those indicated for this project. Firm must have a record of successful in-service performance.
2. Comply with NFPA 70 "National Electrical Code" and ANSI C2 "National Electrical Safety Code" for components and installation.
3. Listing and Labeling: Provide products specified in this Section that are listed and labeled.
 - a The Terms "Listed " and "Labeled": As defined in the "National Electrical Code," Article 100.
 - b Listing and Labeling Agency Qualifications: A "Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory" (NRTL) as defined in OSHA Regulation 1910.7.
4. Coordinate layout and installation of ducts, manholes, and handholes with final arrangement of other utilities and determined in the field.
5. Coordinate elevations of duct and duct bank entrances into manholes and handholes with final profiles of conduits as determined by coordination with other utilities and

underground obstructions. Revise locations and elevations from those indicated as required to suit field conditions and ensure duct runs drain to manholes and handholes, and as approved by the Architect.

G. Delivery, Storage and Handling

1. Deliver ducts to site with ends capped. Store nonmetallic ducts with supports to prevent bending, warping, and deforming.
2. Store precast concrete units at site as recommended by manufacturer to prevent physical damage. Arrange so identification markings are visible.
3. Lift and support precast concrete units only at designated lifting or supporting points.

H. Extra Materials

1. Furnish extra materials matching products installed, packaged with protective covering for storage and with identification labels clearly describing contents.
2. Furnish cable stanchions, support arms, insulators, and associated fasteners each in quantities equal to 5 percent of quantities installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering the specified products that may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

1. Underground Precast Concrete Utility Structures:

- a Precast Division; Carder Concrete Products.
- b Christy Concrete Products, Inc.
- c Elmhurst-Chicago Stone Co.
- d Riverton Concrete Products.
- e Rotondo & Sons, Inc.
- f Rotondo/Penn-Cast, Inc.
- g Smith-Midland Corp.
- h Utility Vault Co.
- i Wausau Concrete Co.

2. Frames and Covers:

- a Campbell Foundry Co.
- b East Jordan Iron Works, Inc.
- c McKinley Iron Works, Inc.
- d Neenah Foundry Co.

3. Nonmetallic Ducts:

- a Arco Corp.
- b Breeze-Illinois, Inc.
- c CANTEX, Inc.
- d Carlon; Lamson & Sessions Company
- e Pipe & Plastic Group; Certainteed Products Corp.
- f Cole-Flex Corp.
- g Electri-Flex Co.
- h Spiraduct, Inc.

2.2 CONDUIT AND DUCT

- A. Rigid Steel Conduit: ANSI C80.1, galvanized.
- B. Plastic-Coated Rigid Steel Conduit and Fittings: NEMA RN 1.
- C. Rigid Plastic Conduit: NEMA TC 2, Schedule 40 PVC, rated for use with 90 deg. C conductors under all installation conditions.
- D. PVC Conduit and Tubing Fittings: NEMA TC 3.
- E. Rigid Plastic Underground Conduit: UL 651A, Type A PVC.
- F. Rigid Plastic Underground Conduit: UL 651A, Type EB PVC.
- G. Rigid Plastic Underground Conduit: High-density polyethylene, Schedule 40.
- H. Rigid Plastic Underground Conduit: Fiberglass-reinforced epoxy.
- I. Plastic Utilities Duct: NEMA TC 6.
- J. Plastic Utilities Duct Fittings: NEMA TC 9; match to duct type and material.
- K. Plastic Communication Duct and Fittings: NEMA TC 10.
- L. Manufactured Bends: Not less than 36-inch (900 mm) radius.
- M. Coilable Plastic Duct: NEMA TC 12.

2.3 PULL BOXES AND HANDHOLES

- A. Cast Metal Boxes: Cast aluminum, sized as indicated, with outside flanges and recessed, gasketed cover for flush mounting. Nonskid finish on cover.
- B. Fiberglass Handholes: Molded fiberglass, sized as indicated, with 6-inch square (150 mm) cable entrance at each side, weatherproof cover with nonskid finish.
- C. Cover Legend: ELECTRIC.

2.4 UNDERGROUND PRECAST CONCRETE UTILITY STRUCTURES

- A. Precast Units: Interlocking, mating sections, complete with accessory items, hardware, and features as indicated. Include concrete knockout panels for conduit entrance and sleeve for ground rod.
- B. Design structure according to ASTM C 858.
- C. Structural Design Loading: ASTM C 857, Class A-16.
- D. Fabricate according to ASTM C 858.
- E. Joint Sealant: Continuous extrusion of asphaltic butyl material with adhesion, cohesion, flexibility, and durability properties necessary to withstand the maximum hydrostatic pressures at the installation location with the ground water level at grade.
- F. Source Quality Control: Inspect structures according to ASTM C 1037.

2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. General
 - 1. Furnish removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and insulators, for installation under another Contract. For each manhole/handhole furnish 1 stanchion for each 30 linear inches (750 mm) of interior floor perimeter. In addition, furnish 1 arm for each stanchion, 3 insulators for each arm, and a total of 3 pulling eyes. Furnish materials complete with associated fasteners, packaged with protective covering for storage and with identification labels clearly describing contents.
 - 2. Duct Supports: Rigid PVC spacers selected to provide minimum duct spacings and concrete cover depths indicated, while supporting ducts during concreting.
 - 3. Frames and Covers: Cast iron with cast-in legend ELECTRIC or SIGNAL as appropriate. Machine cover-to-frame bearing surfaces.
 - 4. Sump Frame and Grate: Comply with FS RR-F-621, Type VII for frame and Type I for cover.
 - 5. Pulling Eyes in Walls: Eyebolt with reinforcing bar fastening insert. 2-inch (50 mm) diameter eye, 1-inch (25 mm) by 4-inch (100 mm) bolt. Working load embedded in 6-inch (150 mm), 4000 psi (27.6 Mpa) concrete: 13,000 pounds minimum tension.
 - 6. Pulling and Lifting Irons in Floor: 7/8-inch-diameter (21 mm), hot-dipped galvanized, bent steel rod, stress relieved after forming, and fastened to reinforced rod. Exposed triangular opening. Ultimate yield strength: 40,000 pounds shear and 60,000 pounds tension.
 - 7. Bolting Inserts for Cable Stanchions: Flared, threaded inserts of noncorrosive, chemical resistant, nonconductive thermoplastic material; ½-inch (12 mm) internal diameter by 2-3/4 inches (68 mm) deep, flared to 1-1/4 inch (30 mm) minimum at base. Tested ultimate pull-out strength: 12,000 pound minimum.

8. Expansion Anchors for Installation After Concrete is Cast: Zinc-plated carbon steel wedge type with stainless-steel expander clip ½-inch (12 mm) bolt size, 5300-pound rated pull-out strength, and 6800 –pound rated shear strength minimum.
9. Cable Stanchions: Hot-rolled, hot-dipped galvanized “T” section steel, 2-1/4-inch (56 mm) size, punched with 14 holes on 1-1/2-inch (35 mm) centers for cable arm attachment.
10. Cable Arms: 3/16-inch (5 mm) thick hot-rolled, hot-dipped galvanized sheet steel pressed to channel shape, approximately two 12 inches (300 mm) wide by 14 inches (350 mm) long and arranged for secure mounting in horizontal position at any position on cable stanchions.
11. Cable Support Insulators: High glaze, wet-process porcelain arranged for mounting on cable arms.
12. Ground Rods: Solid copper clad steel, ¾-inch (18 mm) diameter by 10-feet (3 m) length.
13. Ground Wire: Stranded bare copper, No.6 AWG minimum.
14. Ladder: UL-listed, heavy-duty wood, specifically designed for electrical manhole use. Minimum length equal to the distance from the deepest manhole floor to grade plus 3 feet (1 m).
15. Duct Sealing Compound: Non-hardening, safe for human skin contact, not deleterious to cable insulation, workable at temperatures as low as 35 deg. F (1 deg C), withstands temperature of 300 deg F (149 deg C) without slump, and adheres to clean surfaces of plastic ducts, metallic conduits, conduit coatings, concrete, masonry, lead, cable sheaths, cable jackets, insulation materials, and the common metals.

2.6 CONSTRUCTION MATERIALS

- A. Dampproofing: Conform to Division 7 Section “Bituminous Dampproofing”.
- B. Brick: Conform to ASTM C 55, concrete brick Type I, Grade N.
- C. Mortar: Conform to ASTM C 270, Type M, except for quantities less than 2.0 cr. Ft. (60 L), where packaged mix complying with ASTM C 387, Type M may be used.
- D. Concrete: Conform to Division 3 Section “Cast-In-Place Concrete” for concrete and reinforcing.
 1. Strength: 3000 psi (20.7 Mpa) minimum 28-day compressive strength.
 2. Aggregate For Duct Encasement: 3/8-inch (10 mm) maximum size.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Underground Ducts For Electrical Utility Service: Plastic conduit encased in “Red” concrete.
- B. Underground Ducts For Electrical Feeders: Plastic conduit encased in “Red” concrete.
- C. Underground Ducts For Telephone Utility Service: Plastic utilities duct encased in concrete.
- D. Underground Ducts For Communication Circuits: Plastic underground conduit encased in concrete.

- E. Handholes; Underground precast concrete utility structures.
- F. Manholes: Underground Precast concrete utility structures.

3.2 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine site to receive ducts, handholes and manholes for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the underground ducts and manholes. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.3 EARTHWORK

- A. Excavation and Backfill: Conform to Division 2 Section "Earthwork," but do not use heavy-duty, hydraulic-operated compaction equipment.
- B. Restore surface features at areas disturbed by excavation, and reestablish original grades except as otherwise indicated. Replace removed sod as soon as possible after backfilling is complete. Restore all areas disturbed by trenching, storing of dirt, cable laying, and other work. Restore vegetation and include necessary topsoiling, fertilizing, liming, seeding, sodding, sprigging, or mulching. Perform according to Division 2 Section "Landscape Work."
- C. Restore disturbed paving. Refer to "Cutting and Patching" in Division 1.

3.4 CONDUIT AND DUCT INSTALLATION

- A. Install nonmetallic conduit and duct as indicated according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Slope: Pitch ducts minimum of 4 inches per 100 feet (1:300) to drain toward manholes and handholes and away from buildings and equipment. Slope ducts from a high point in runs between 2 manholes to drain in both directions.
- C. Curves and Bends: Use manufactured elbows for stub-ups at equipment and at building entrances. Use manufactured long sweep bends with a minimum radius of 25 feet (7.5 m) both horizontally and vertically at other locations.
- D. Make joints in ducts and fittings watertight according to manufacturer's instructions. Stagger couplings so those of adjacent ducts do not lie in the same plane.
- E. Duct Entrances to Manholes and Handholes: Space end bells approximately 10 inches (250 mm) on center for 5-high (125 mm) ducts and varied proportionately for other duct sizes. Change from regular spacing to end-bell spacing 10 feet (3 m) from the end bell without reducing duct line slope and without forming a trap in the line. Grout end bells into manhole walls from both sides to provide watertight entrances.
- F. Building Entrances: Transition for underground duct to conduit 10 feet (3 m) minimum outside the building wall. Use fittings manufactured for the purpose. Follow appropriate installation instructions below.

- G. Concrete-Encased Ducts: Install reinforcing in duct banks passing through disturbed earth near buildings and other excavations. Coordinate duct bank with structural design to support duct bank at wall without reducing structural or watertight integrity of building wall.
- H. Direct-Buried, Nonencased Duct Entering Nonwaterproofed Walls: Install a Schedule 40 galvanized-steel pipe sleeve for each duct. Caulk space between conduit and sleeve with duct-sealing compound on both sides for moisture-tight seal.
- I. Waterproofed Wall and Floor Entrances: Install a watertight entrance-sealing device with the sealing gland assembly on the inside. Anchor device into masonry construction with 1 or more integral flanges. Secure membrane waterproofing to the device to make permanently watertight.
- J. Separation Between Direct-Buried, Nonencased Ducts: 3 inches (75 mm) minimum for like services, and 12 inches (300 mm) minimum between power and signal ducts.
- K. Concrete-Encased Nonmetallic Ducts: Support on plastic separators coordinated with duct size and required duct spacing, and install according to the following:
- L. Separator Installation: Space separators close enough to prevent sagging and deforming of ducts, and secure separators to the earth and to ducts to prevent floating during concreting. Do not use tie wires or reinforcing steel that may form conductive or magnetic loops around ducts or duct groups.
- M. Concreting: Spade concrete carefully during pours to prevent voids under and between conduits and at exterior surface of envelope. Do not use power-driven agitating equipment unless specifically designed for duct bank application. Pour each run of envelope between manholes or other terminations in 1 continuous operation. When more than one pour is necessary, terminate each pour in a vertical plane and install $\frac{3}{4}$ -inch (18 mm) reinforcing rod dowels extending 18 inches (450 mm) into the concrete on both sides of joint near the corners of the envelope.
- N. Reinforcing: Reinforce duct banks where they cross disturbed earth and where indicated.
- O. Forms: All ductbanks shall be formed. Use the walls of the trench to form the side walls of the duct bank is unacceptable.
- P. Minimum Clearances Between Ducts: 3 inches (75 mm) between ducts and exterior envelope wall and for like services, and 10 inches (250 mm) between power and signal ducts.
- Q. Depth: Except as otherwise indicated, install top of duct bank at least 24 inches (600 mm) below finished grade in nontraffic areas and at least 30 inches (750 mm) below finished grade in vehicular traffic areas.
- R. Stub-Ups: Use rigid steel conduit or stub-ups to equipment. For equipment mounted on outdoor concrete pads, extend steel conduit a minimum of 5 feet (1.5 m) from edge of pad. Install insulated grounding bushings on the terminations. Couple steel conduits to the ducts with adapters designed for the purpose and then encase coupling with 3 inches (75 mm) of concrete.

- S. Sealing: Provide temporary closure at terminations of ducts that are wired under this Project. Seal spare ducts at terminations. Use sealing compound and plugs to withstand at least 15 psi (1.03 Mpa) hydrostatic pressure.
- T. Pulling Cord: Install 100-pound-test nylon cord in ducts, including spares.

3.5 UNDERGROUND UTILITY STRUCTURE INSTALLATION

- A. Elevation: Install manholes with rooftop at least 15 inches (375 mm) below finished grade. Install handholes with depth as indicated. Where indicated, cast handhole cover frame directly into roof of handhole and set roof surface 1 inch (25 mm) above grade.
- B. Drainage: Install drains in bottom of units where indicated. Arrange to coordinate with drainage provisions indicated or specified.
- C. Access: Install cast-iron frame and cover. For manholes, use 30-inch (750 mm) cover except as indicated. Use 30-inch (750 mm) cover for handholes, except use 24-inch (600 mm) covers for 24-inch (600 mm) by 24-inch (600 mm) handholes. Install brick chimney to support frame and cover and to connect cover with roof opening. Provide moisture-tight masonry joints and waterproof grouting for cast-iron frame to chimney. Set frames in paved areas and traffic ways flush with finished grade. Set other frames 1 inch (25 mm) above finished grade.
- D. Waterproofing: Apply waterproofing to exterior surfaces of units after concrete has cured at least 3 day. Apply according to Division 7 Section "Sheet Membrane Waterproofing". After ducts have been connected and grouted, and prior to backfilling, waterproof joints and connections and touch up abrasions and scars. Waterproof exterior of manhole/handhole chimneys after brick mortar has cured at least 3 days.
- E. Dampproofing: Apply dampproofing to exterior surfaces of units after concrete has cured at least 3 days. Apply according to Division 7 Section "Bituminous Dampproofing". After ducts have been connected and grouted, and prior to backfilling, dampproof joints and connections and touch up abrasions and scars. Dampproof exterior of manhole/handhole chimneys after brick mortar has cured at least 3 days.
- F. Hardware: Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cable and conductors and as indicated.
- G. Field-Installed Bolting Anchors: Do not drill deeper than 3-7/8 inches (96 mm) for anchor bolts installed in the field. Use a minimum of 2 anchors for each cable stanchion.
- H. Grounding: Install ground rod through floor in each structure with top protruding 4 inches (100 mm) above floor. Seal the floor opening against water penetration with waterproof non-shrink grout. Ground exposed metal components and hardware with bare copper ground conductor. Train conductors neatly around corners. Install on walls and roof using cable clamps secured with expansion anchors.
- I. Cast-In-Place Underground Structure installation: Conform to applicable requirements of Division 3 Section "Cast-In-Place Concrete."

- J. Finish interior surfaces with a smooth troweled finish.
- K. Windows for Future Duct Connections: Form and pour concrete knock-out panels 1-1/2 to 2 inches (37 to 50 mm) thick, arranged as indicated.
- L. Precast Concrete Underground Structure Installation: Install as indicated, according to manufacturer's written instructions and ASTM C 891.
- M. Install units plumb and level and with orientation and depth coordinated with arrangement of connecting ducts to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.
- N. Support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from the 1-inch (25 mm) sieve to the No. 4 sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing: Demonstrate capability and compliance with requirements upon completion of installation of underground duct and utility structures.
- B. Grounding: Test manhole grounding to ensure electrical continuity of bonding and grounding connections. Measure ground resistance at each ground rod and report results. Use an instrument specifically designed for ground-resistance measurements.
- C. Duct Integrity: Rod ducts with a mandrel ¼ inch (6 mm) smaller in diameter than internal diameter of ducts. Where rodding indicated obstructions in ducts, remove the obstructions and retest.
- D. Water Tightness: Make internal inspection of manholes 3 months after completion of construction for indications of water ingress. Where leakage is noted, remove water and seal leak sources. Re-inspect after 2 months and reseal remaining leak sources. Repeat process at 2 month intervals until leaks are corrected.
- E. Correct installation where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance. Otherwise, remove and replace defective products and retest.

3.7 CLEANING

- A. Pull brush through full length of ducts. Use round bristle brush with a diameter ½ inch (12 mm) greater than internal diameter of duct.
- B. Clean internal surfaces of manholes including sump. Remove foreign material.

END OF SECTION 263353

SECTION 260553

IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including AIA A201 and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Identification for busway and raceways.
 - 2. Identification of power and control cables.
 - 3. Identification for conductors.
 - 4. Underground-line warning tape.
 - 5. Warning labels and signs.
 - 6. Instruction signs.
 - 7. Equipment identification labels.
 - 8. Miscellaneous identification products.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each electrical identification product indicated.
- B. Samples: For each type of label and sign to illustrate size, colors, lettering style, mounting provisions, and graphic features of identification products.
- C. Identification Schedule: An index of nomenclature of electrical equipment and system components used in identification signs and labels.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with ANSI A13.1.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.144 and 29 CFR 1910.145.
- D. Comply with ANSI Z535.4 for safety signs and labels.
- E. Adhesive-attached labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers, shall comply with UL 969.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in other Sections requiring identification applications, Drawings, Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and the Operation and Maintenance Manual; and with those required by codes, standards, and 29 CFR 1910.145. Use consistent designations throughout Project.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- C. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with location of access panels and doors.
- D. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 POWER RACEWAY IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with ANSI A13.1 for minimum size of letters for legend and for minimum length of color field for each raceway size.
- B. Colors for Raceways Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less:
 - 1. Black letters on a yellow field.
 - 2. Legend: Indicate voltage.
- C. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Labels for Raceways Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less: Preprinted, flexible label laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound adhesive tape for securing ends of legend label.

2.2 ARMORED AND METAL-CLAD CABLE IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with ANSI A13.1 for minimum size of letters for legend and for minimum length of color field for each raceway and cable size.
- B. Colors for Raceways Carrying Circuits at 600 V and Less:
 - 1. Black letters on a yellow field.
 - 2. Legend: Indicate voltage.
- C. Indoor: Self-Adhesive Vinyl Labels: Preprinted, flexible label laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound adhesive tape for securing ends of legend label.
- D. Outdoor: Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Colored, heavy duty, waterproof, fade resistant; 2 inches (50 mm) wide; compounded for outdoor use.

2.3 POWER AND CONTROL CABLE IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with ANSI A13.1 for minimum size of letters for legend and for minimum length of color field for each raceway and cable size.
- B. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Labels: Preprinted, flexible label laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound adhesive tape for securing ends of legend label.

2.4 CONDUCTOR IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

- A. Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Colored, self-adhesive vinyl tape not less than 3 mils (0.08 mm) thick by 1 to 2 inches (25 to 50 mm) wide.

2.5 FLOOR MARKING TAPE

- A. 2-inch- (50-mm-) wide, 5-mil (0.125-mm) pressure-sensitive vinyl tape, with black and white stripes and clear vinyl overlay.

2.6 UNDERGROUND-LINE WARNING TAPE

- A. Tape:
 - 1. Recommended by manufacturer for the method of installation and suitable to identify and locate underground electrical and communications lines.
 - 2. Printing on tape shall be permanent and shall not be damaged by burial operations.
 - 3. Tape material and ink shall be chemically inert, and not subject to degrading when exposed to acids, alkalis, and other destructive substances commonly found in soils.
- B. Color and Printing:
 - 1. Comply with ANSI Z535.1 through ANSI Z535.5.
 - 2. Inscriptions for Red-Colored Tapes: ELECTRIC LINE, HIGH VOLTAGE.
 - 3. Inscriptions for Orange-Colored Tapes: TELEPHONE CABLE, CATV CABLE, COMMUNICATIONS CABLE, OPTICAL FIBER CABLE.
- C. Underground Warning Tape (minimum): Permanent, bright-colored, continuous-printed, vinyl tape compounded for permanent direct-burial service, and with the following features:
 - 1. Detectable three-layer laminate, consisting of a printed pigmented polyolefin film, a solid aluminum-foil core, and a clear protective film that allows inspection of the continuity of the conductive core, bright-colored, continuous-printed on one side, compounded for direct-burial service.
 - 2. Overall Thickness: 5 mils (0.125 mm).
 - 3. Foil Core Thickness: 0.35 mil (0.00889 mm).
 - 4. Weight: 28 lb/1000 sq. ft. (13.7 kg/100 sq. m).
 - 5. 3-Inch (75-mm) Tensile According to ASTM D 882: 70 lbf (311.3 N), and 4600 psi (31.7 MPa).

2.7 WARNING LABELS AND SIGNS

- A. Comply with NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1910.145, Chapter XVII. Colors, legend, and size appropriate to each application.
 - 1. Interior Units: Self-Adhesive Warning Labels: Factory-printed, multicolor, pressure-sensitive adhesive labels, configured for display on front cover, door, or other access to equipment unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Exterior Units: Weather-resistant, nonfading, preprinted, cellulose-acetate butyrate with 0.0396-inch (1-mm), galvanized-steel backing. 1/4-inch (6-mm) grommets in corners for mounting.
- B. Fasteners for Nameplates and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or No. 10/32 stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.
- C. Self-Adhesive Warning Labels: Factory-printed, multicolor, pressure-sensitive adhesive labels, configured for display on front cover, door, or other access to equipment unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Warning label and sign shall include, but are not limited to, the following legends:
 - 1. Multiple Power Source Warning: "DANGER - ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD - EQUIPMENT HAS MULTIPLE POWER SOURCES."
 - 2. Workspace Clearance Warning: "WARNING - OSHA REGULATION - AREA IN FRONT OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT MUST BE KEPT CLEAR FOR 36 INCHES (915 MM)."
 - 3. The above are sample warning labels. Specific warning labels shall be determined by the Electrical Contractor.
 - 4. Electrical Contractor shall provide additional warning signs as required by the local AHJ.
 - 5. Provide additional signage as requested by owner, maintenance and safety personal.

2.8 INSTRUCTION SIGNS

- A. Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine plastic, minimum 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick for signs up to 20 sq. inches (129 sq. cm) and 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick for larger sizes.
 - 1. Engraved legend with white letters on black face.
 - 2. Punched or drilled for mechanical fasteners.
 - 3. Framed with mitered acrylic molding and arranged for attachment at applicable equipment.
- B. Adhesive Film Label with Clear Protective Overlay: Machine printed, in black, by thermal transfer or equivalent process. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch (10 mm). Overlay shall provide a weatherproof and UV-resistant seal for label.

2.9 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION LABELS

- A. Self-Adhesive, Engraved, Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Label: Adhesive backed, with white letters on a dark-gray background. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch (10 mm).
- B. Engraved-Plastic Labels, Signs, and Instruction Plates: Engraving stock, melamine plastic laminate punched or drilled for mechanical fasteners 1/16-inch (1.6-mm) minimum thickness for signs up to 20 sq. in. (129 sq. cm) and 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) minimum thickness for larger sizes. Engraved legend in black letters on white background, unless otherwise indicated. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch (10 mm).

2.10 CABLE TIES

- A. Plenum-Rated Cable Ties: Self-extinguishing, UV stabilized, one piece, self locking.
 - 1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch (5 mm).
 - 2. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F (23 deg C), According to ASTM D 638: 7000 psi (48.2 MPa).
 - 3. UL 94 Flame Rating: 94V-0.
 - 4. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 284 deg F (Minus 46 to plus 140 deg C).
 - 5. Color: Black.

2.11 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

- A. Paint: Comply with requirements in Division 09 painting Sections for paint materials and application requirements. Select paint system applicable for surface material and location (exterior or interior).
- B. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Verify identity of each item before installing identification products.
- B. Location: Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment.
- C. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.
- D. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Clean surfaces before application, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification device.
- E. Attach signs and plastic labels that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.
- F. System Identification Color-Coding Bands for Raceways and Cables: Each color-coding band shall completely encircle cable or conduit. Place adjacent bands of two-color markings in

contact, side by side. Locate bands at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50-foot (15-m) maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot (7.6-m) maximum intervals in congested areas.

- G. Cable Ties: For attaching tags. Use general-purpose type, except as listed below:
 - 1. Outdoors: UV-stabilized nylon.
 - 2. In Spaces Handling Environmental Air: Plenum rated.
- H. Underground-Line Warning Tape: During backfilling of trenches install continuous underground-line warning tape directly above line at 6 to 8 inches (150 to 200 mm) below finished grade. Use multiple tapes where width of multiple lines installed in a common trench or concrete envelope exceeds 16 inches (400 mm) overall.
- I. Painted Identification: Comply with requirements in Division 09 painting Sections for surface preparation and paint application.

3.2 IDENTIFICATION SCHEDULE

- A. Busway, Accessible Raceways, Armored and Metal-Clad Cables, More Than 600 V: Self-adhesive vinyl labels. Install labels at 30-foot (10-m) maximum intervals.
- B. Accessible Raceways and Metal-Clad Cables, 600 V or Less, for Service, Feeder, and Branch Circuits More Than 30A, and 120V to ground: Identify with self-adhesive vinyl label. Install labels at 10-foot (3-m) maximum intervals.
- C. Accessible Raceways and Cables within Buildings: Identify the covers of each junction and pull box of the following systems with self-adhesive vinyl labels with the wiring system legend and system voltage. System legends shall be as follows:
 - 1. Optional Standby Power.
 - 2. Power.
 - 3. Fire Alarm.
 - 4. Low Voltage.
 - 5. UPS Power.
- D. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification, 600 V or Less: For conductors in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use color-coding conductor tape to identify the phase.
 - 1. Color-Coding for Phase and Voltage Level Identification, 600 V or Less: Use colors listed below for ungrounded service, feeder, and branch-circuit conductors.
 - a. Color shall be factory applied or field applied for sizes larger than No. 8 AWG, if authorities having jurisdiction permit.
 - b. Colors for 208/120-V Circuits:
 - 1) Phase A: Black.
 - 2) Phase B: Red.

- 3) Phase C: Blue.
 - 4) Neutral: White
 - 5) Ground: Green
 - 6) Isolated Ground: Green w/trace ID
- c. Field-Applied, Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Apply in half-lapped turns for a minimum distance of 6 inches (150 mm) from terminal points and in boxes where splices or taps are made. Apply last two turns of tape with no tension to prevent possible unwinding. Locate bands to avoid obscuring factory cable markings.
- E. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification, More than 600 V: For conductors in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use nonmetallic plastic tag holder with adhesive-backed phase tags, and a separate tag with the circuit designation.
- F. Install instructional sign including the color-code for grounded and ungrounded conductors using adhesive-film-type labels.
- G. Conductors to Be Extended in the Future: Attach marker tape to conductors and list source. Identify source and circuit numbers in each cabinet, pull and junction box, and outlet box.
- H. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Identify field-installed alarm, control, and signal connections.
1. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, and pull points. Identify by system and circuit designation.
 2. Use system of marker tape designations that is uniform and consistent with system used by manufacturer for factory-installed connections.
 3. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and the Operation and Maintenance Manual.
- I. Locations of Underground Lines: Identify with underground-line warning tape for power, lighting, communication, and control wiring and optical fiber cable.
1. Limit use of underground-line warning tape to direct-buried cables.
 2. Install underground-line warning tape for both direct-buried cables and cables in raceway.
- J. Workspace Indication: Install floor marking tape to show working clearances in the direction of access to live parts. Workspace shall be as required by NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1926.403 unless otherwise indicated. Do not install at flush-mounted panelboards and similar equipment in finished spaces.
- K. Warning Labels for Indoor Cabinets, Boxes, and Enclosures for Power and Lighting: Self-adhesive or mechanical fastened warning labels. For outdoor equipment, weather-resistant, nonfading, preprinted, cellulose-acetate butyrate with 0.0396-inch (1-mm), galvanized-steel backing. 1/4-inch (6-mm) grommets in corners for mounting.
1. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.145.
 2. Identify system voltage with black letters on an orange background.

3. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access.
 4. For equipment with multiple power or control sources, apply to door or cover of equipment including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Power transfer switches.
 - b. Controls with external control power connections.
 - c. Storm switches.
 - d. Generator docking stations.
- L. Operating Instruction Signs: Install instruction signs to facilitate proper operation and maintenance of electrical systems and items to which they connect. Install instruction signs with approved legend where instructions are needed for system or equipment operation.
- M. Emergency Operating Instruction Signs: Install instruction signs with white legend on a red background with minimum 3/8-inch- (10-mm-) high letters for emergency instructions at equipment used for power transfer, load shedding, kirk key operation.
- N. At each pull box, junction box and outlet box, each circuit contained therein shall be identified by panel designation and circuit number. This shall be accomplished by attaching hand written cardboard labels with string to each set of wires or by other agreed upon methods. In addition, where boxes are concealed, covers shall be marked with the same information using magic marker or other agreed upon means.
- O. Equipment Identification Labels: On each unit of equipment, install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, and the Operation and Maintenance Manual. Apply labels to disconnect switches and protection equipment, central or master units, control panels, control stations, terminal cabinets, and racks of each system. Systems include power, lighting, control, communication, signal, monitoring, and alarm systems unless equipment is provided with its own identification.
1. Labeling Instructions:
 - a. Indoor Equipment: Self-adhesive, engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) high letters on 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) high label; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches (50 mm) high.
 - b. Outdoor Equipment: Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label, Stenciled legend 4 inches (100 mm) high.
 - c. Elevated Components: Increase the sizes of labels and letters to those appropriate for viewing from the floor.
 - d. Unless provided with self-adhesive means of attachment, fasten labels with appropriate mechanical fasteners that do not change the NEMA or NRTL rating of the enclosure.
 2. Equipment to Be Labeled:
 - a. Panelboards: Typewritten directory of circuits in the location provided by panelboard manufacturer. Information shall include circuit numbers, type of load

served and location of load served. For example: #1 Receptacles in rooms 5 & 6.
Panelboard identification shall be engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label.

- b. Enclosures and electrical cabinets.
- c. Access doors and panels for concealed electrical items.
- d. Switchgear.
- e. Transfer switches.
- f. Switchboards.
- g. Generators.
- h. Storm Switches.
- i. Busway.
- j. Transformers: Label that includes tag designation shown on Drawings for the transformer, feeder, and panelboards or equipment supplied by the secondary.
- k. Substations.
- l. Emergency system boxes and enclosures.
- m. Motor-control centers.
- n. Enclosed switches.
- o. Enclosed circuit breakers.
- p. Enclosed controllers.
- q. Variable-speed controllers.
- r. Push-button stations.
- s. Power transfer equipment.
- t. Contactors.
- u. Remote-controlled switches, dimmer modules, and control devices.
- v. Battery-inverter units.
- w. Battery racks.
- x. Power-generating units.
- y. Monitoring and control equipment.
- z. UPS equipment.
- aa. Lighting control equipment.

END OF SECTION 260553

SECTION 261216

LOW-VOLTAGE TRANSFORMERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SCOPE

- A. The Contractor shall furnish and install general purpose individually mounted dry-type transformers of the two-windings type, self-cooled as specified herein, and as shown on the contract drawings.

1.2 REFERENCES

- A. The transformers and all components shall be designed, manufactured and tested in accordance with the latest applicable standards of ANSI, NEMA and UL.
- B. Transformers shall meet the requirements of federal law 10 CFR Part 431 "Energy Efficiency Program for Certain Commercial and Industrial Equipment" and NEMA Premium® Efficiency Transformer program.

1.3 SUBMITTALS – FOR REVIEW/APPROVAL

- A. The following information shall be submitted to the Engineer:
 - 1. Outline dimensions and weights
 - 2. Transformer ratings including:
 - a. kVA
 - b. Primary and secondary voltage
 - c. Taps
 - d. Design impedance
 - e. Insulation class and temperature rise
 - f. Sound level.
 - 3. Product data sheets

1.4 SUBMITTALS – FOR CONSTRUCTION

- A. The following information shall be submitted for record purposes.
 - 1. Final as-built drawings and information for items listed in Paragraph 1.04, and shall incorporate all changes made during the manufacturing process.
 - 2. Connection diagrams
 - 3. Installation information
 - 4. Seismic certification and equipment anchorage details as specified.

1.5 QUALIFICATIONS

- A. The manufacturer of the assembly shall be the manufacturer of the major components within the assembly.
- B. For the equipment specified herein, the manufacturer shall be ISO 9001 or 9002 certified.
- C. The manufacturer of this equipment shall have produced similar electrical equipment for a minimum period of five (5) years. When requested by the Engineer, an acceptable list of installations with similar equipment shall be provided demonstrating compliance with this requirement.

1.6 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. All transformers shall be UL listed and bear the UL label.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Equipment shall be handled and stored in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. One (1) copy of these instructions shall be included with the equipment at time of shipment.

1.8 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Equipment operation and maintenance manuals shall be provided with each assembly shipped, and shall include instruction leaflets and instruction bulletins for the complete assembly and each major component.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Products.
- B. Square D; Schneider Electric
- C. General Electric Company
- D. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.

The listing of specific manufacturers above does not imply acceptance of their products that do not meet the specified ratings, features and functions. Manufacturers listed above are not relieved from meeting these specifications in their entirety. Products in compliance with the specification and manufactured by others not named will be considered only if pre-approved by the Engineer ten (10) days prior to bid date.

2.2 RATINGS

- A. The kVA and voltage ratings shall be as indicated on the drawings.
- B. Transformers shall be designed for continuous operation at rated kVA, for 24 hours a day, 365 days a year operation, with normal life expectancy as defined in ANSI C57.96.

- C. Transformer sound levels shall not exceed the following ANSI and NEMA levels for self-cooled ratings:

0 to	9 kVA	40 dB
10 to	50 kVA	45 dB
51 to	150 kVA	50 dB
151 to	300 kVA	55 dB
301 to	500 kVA	60 dB
501 to	700 kVA	62 dB
701 to	1000 kVA	64 dB
1001 to	1500 kVA	65 dB

- D. Transformers shall meet or exceed the efficiency levels specified in the NEMA Premium® Efficiency Transformers Program. Efficiencies are measured at 35% loading and 75 degrees C.

<u>3-PHASE KVA</u>	<u>MINIMUM EFFICIENCY</u>
15	97.90%
30	98.25%
45	98.39%
75	98.60%
112.5	98.74%
150	98.81%
225	98.95%
300	99.02%
500	99.09%
750	99.16%
1000	99.23%

2.3 CONSTRUCTION – NEMA PREMIUM® TRANSFORMERS

A. Insulation Systems

1. Transformer insulation system shall be as follows:
 - a. 45 kVA and below: minimum of 200 degree C insulation system with 115 degree C rise, ventilated design.
2. Required performance shall be obtained without exceeding the above indicated temperature rise in a 40 degrees C maximum ambient, and a 24-hour average ambient of 30 degrees C
3. All insulation materials shall be flame-retardant and shall not support combustion as defined in ASTM Standard Test Method D635

B. Core and Coil Assemblies

1. Transformer core shall be constructed with high-grade, non-aging, silicon steel with high magnetic permeability, and low hysteresis and eddy current losses. Maximum magnetic flux densities shall be substantially below the saturation point. The transformer core volume shall allow efficient transformer operation at 10% above the nominal tap voltage. The core laminations shall be tightly clamped and compressed. Coils shall be wound of electrical grade aluminum or copper with continuous wound construction.

2. On three-phase units rated 15 kVA and above the core and coil assembly shall be impregnated with non-hygroscopic, thermosetting varnish and cured to reduce hot spots and seal out moisture. Enameled conductors may also be used. The assembly shall be installed on vibration-absorbing pads that prevent metal-to-metal contact between the core and mounting base.

C. Taps

1. Three-phase transformers rated 15 kVA and larger shall be provided with six 2-1/2% taps, two above and four below rated primary voltage.

D. Electrostatic Shielding

1. Where shown on the drawings, provide shielded isolation transformers with an electrostatic shield consisting of a single turn of aluminum placed between the primary and secondary winding and grounded to the housing of the transformer.
 - a. Electrostatic shield shall provide primary to secondary winding capacitance between 24 and 18 picofarads over the range of 100 Hz to 20 kHz.
 - b. Electrostatic shielding shall provide the following minimum attenuation when tested per MIL-Std-220A, Method of Insertion Loss Measurement, with matched impedance no load technique:
 - c. Common mode noise attenuation: Minus 80 dBA minimum at 0.1 kHz to 1.5 kHz; minus 55 dBA minimum at 1.51 kHz to 100 kHz. Normal mode (Transverse mode) noise attenuation: Minus 35dBA minimum at 1.5 kHz to 10 kHz.

E. Enclosure

1. The enclosure shall be made of heavy-gauge steel. All transformers shall be equipped with a wiring compartment suitable for conduit entry and large enough to allow convenient wiring. The maximum temperature of the enclosure shall not exceed 50 degrees C rise above a 40 degree C maximum ambient (90 degrees C.) The core of the transformer shall be grounded to the enclosure with a flexible copper strap that is fully-rated as a grounding conductor.
 - a. The enclosure construction shall be ventilated, NEMA 2 drip-proof, with lifting provisions. All ventilation openings shall be protected against falling dirt. On outdoor units, provide weathershields over ventilated openings.
 - b. Enclosures shall be finished with ANSI 61 color, weather-resistant enamel.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. On ventilated outdoor units provide suitable weathershields over ventilation openings.
- B. Lug kits shall be provided by the Manufacturer of the transformer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 FACTORY TESTING

- A. The following standard factory tests shall be performed on the equipment provided under this section. All tests shall be in accordance with the latest version of ANSI and NEMA standards.
 1. Ratio tests at the rated voltage connection and at all tap connections

2. Polarity and phase relation tests on the rated voltage connection
3. Applied potential tests.
4. Induced potential test.
5. No-load and excitation current at rated voltage on the rated voltage connection

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. The Contractors shall install all equipment per the manufacturer's recommendations and the contract drawings.

3.3 FIELD ADJUSTMENTS

- A. Adjust taps to deliver appropriate secondary voltage.

3.4 FIELD TESTING

- A. Measure primary and secondary voltages for proper tap settings.

END OF SECTION 261216

SECTION 262416

PANELBOARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including AIA A201 and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Distribution panelboards.
 - 2. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. SVR: Suppressed voltage rating.
- B. TVSS: Transient voltage surge suppressor.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Panelboards shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7.
 - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of panelboard, switching and overcurrent protective device, transient voltage suppression device, accessory, and component indicated. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each panelboard and related equipment.
 - 1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details. Show tabulations of installed devices, equipment features, and ratings.
 - 2. Detail enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
 - 3. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
 - 4. Short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.
 - 5. Include evidence of NRTL listing for series rating of installed devices.

6. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
 7. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
 8. Include time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in panelboards. Submit on translucent log-log graph paper; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device.
 9. When used as "service Entrance Equipment", it is the Contractor's responsibility to submit all shop drawings to the local power company and electrical inspector and obtain their approval (including main circuit breakers characteristics) prior to fabrication.
- C. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.
- D. Seismic Qualification Certificates: Submit certification that panelboards, overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems." Include the following:
1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- E. Field Quality-Control Reports:
1. Test procedures used.
 2. Test results that comply with requirements.
 3. Results of failed tests and corrective action taken to achieve test results that comply with requirements.
- F. Panelboard Schedules: For installation in panelboards. Submit final versions after load balancing.
- G. Operation and Maintenance Data: For panelboards and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting overcurrent protective devices.
 2. Time-current curves, including selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device that allows adjustments.
- 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA or an NRTL.
1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

- B. Source Limitations: Obtain panelboards, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories from single source from single manufacturer.
- C. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for panelboards including clearances between panelboards and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- E. Comply with NEMA PB 1.
- F. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside panelboards; install temporary electric heating (250 W per panelboard) to prevent condensation.
- B. Handle and prepare panelboards for installation according to NEMA PB 1.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations:
 - 1. Do not deliver or install panelboards until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above panelboards is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
 - 2. Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
 - a. Ambient Temperature: Not exceeding minus 5 deg C to plus 104 deg F (plus 40 deg C).
 - b. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet (2000 m).
- B. Service Conditions: NEMA PB 1, usual service conditions, as follows:
 - 1. Ambient temperatures within limits specified.
 - 2. Altitude not exceeding 6600 feet (2000 m).

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of panelboards and components with other construction that penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment, raceways, piping, encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.

- B. If freestanding, coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace transient voltage suppression devices that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

- 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

1.11 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

- 1. Keys: Two spares for each type of panelboard cabinet lock.
 - 2. Circuit Breakers Including GFCI and Ground Fault Equipment Protection (GFEP) Types: Two spares for each panelboard.
 - 3. Fuses for Fused Switches: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.
 - 4. Fuses for Fused Power-Circuit Devices: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PANELBOARDS

- A. Fabricate and test panelboards according to IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

- B. Enclosures: Flush- and surface-mounted cabinets, per plans.

- 1. Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.
 - a. Indoor Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
 - b. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
 - c. Wash-Down Areas: NEMA 250, Type 4X, stainless steel.
 - d. Other Wet or Damp Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.
 - e. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: NEMA 250, Type 12.
 - f. Hazardous Areas Indicated on Drawings: NEMA 250, Type 7C.
 - 2. Door-In-Trim: Provide with piano hinge on left side of trim, so that trim (and door) can be swung open for easy access to wiring terminals (rather than removed).
 - 3. Skirt for Surface-Mounted Panelboards: Same gage and finish as panelboard front with flanges for attachment to panelboard, wall, and ceiling or floor.

4. Gutter Extension and Barrier: Same gage and finish as panelboard enclosure; integral with enclosure body. Arrange to isolate individual panel sections.
 5. Finishes:
 - a. Panels and Trim: Steel and galvanized steel, factory finished immediately after cleaning and pretreating with manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat.
 - b. Back Boxes: Galvanized steel, or same finish as panels and trim.
 - c. Fungus Proofing: Permanent fungicidal treatment for overcurrent protective devices and other components.
 6. Directory Card: Inside panelboard door, typewritten, mounted in transparent card holder.
 7. Equip door with spring latch and tumbler-lock with all locks keyed alike.
- C. Phase, Neutral, and Ground Buses:
1. Material: Tin-plated aluminum.
 2. Equipment Ground Bus: Adequate for feeder and branch-circuit equipment grounding conductors; bonded to box.
 3. Isolated Ground Bus, where indicated on plans: Adequate for branch-circuit isolated ground conductors; insulated from box.
 4. Extra-Capacity Neutral Bus, where indicated on plans: Neutral bus rated 200 percent of phase bus and UL listed as suitable for nonlinear loads.
 5. Split Bus, where indicated on plans: Vertical buses divided into individual vertical sections.
- D. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.
1. Material: Tin-plated aluminum.
 2. Main and Neutral Lugs: Mechanical type.
 3. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: Mechanical type.
 4. Feed-Through Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at opposite end of bus from incoming lugs or main device.
 5. Subfeed (Double) Lugs: Mechanical type suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.
 6. Gutter-Tap Lugs: Mechanical type suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.
 7. Extra-Capacity Neutral Lugs: Rated 200 percent of phase lugs mounted on extra-capacity neutral bus.
 8. Suitable for use with conductor material
- E. Service Equipment Label: NRTL labeled for use as service equipment for panelboards or load centers with one or more main service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.
- F. Future Devices: Mounting brackets, bus connections, filler plates, and necessary appurtenances required for future installation of devices.

- G. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Rated for series-connected system with integral or remote upstream overcurrent protective devices and labeled by an NRTL. Include size and type of allowable upstream and branch devices, listed and labeled for series-connected short-circuit rating by an NRTL.
- H. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current available at terminals.

2.2 DISTRIBUTION PANELBOARDS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:
 - 1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
 - 2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
 - 3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
 - 4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
- B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, power and feeder distribution type.
- C. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
 - 1. For doors more than 36 inches (914 mm) high, provide two latches, keyed alike.
- D. Mains: Circuit breaker, fused switch, or lugs only. See drawings.
- E. All branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on circuit breakers.
- F. Contactors in Main Bus: NEMA ICS 2, Class A, mechanically held, general-purpose controller, with same short-circuit interrupting rating as panelboard.
 - 1. Internal Control-Power Source: Control-power transformer, with fused primary and secondary terminals, connected to main bus ahead of contactor connection.
 - 2. External Control-Power Source: 120-V branch circuit or 24-V control circuit, coordinated with control specific control system.

2.3 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE BRANCH-CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:
 - 1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
 - 2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
 - 3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
 - 4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
- B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, lighting and appliance branch-circuit type.
- C. Mains: Circuit breaker or lugs only, per drawings.

- D. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.
- E. Contactors in Main Bus: NEMA ICS 2, Class A, mechanically held, general-purpose controller, with same short-circuit interrupting rating as panelboard.
 - 1. Internal Control-Power Source: Control-power transformer, with fused primary and secondary terminals, connected to main bus ahead of contactor connection.
 - 2. External Control-Power Source: 120-V branch circuit or 24-V control circuit.
- F. Doors: Concealed hinges; secured with flush latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
- G. Circuit Breaker Locks: Provide thirty (30).

2.4 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

- A. Per section 262816 Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers.

2.5 PANELBOARD SUPPRESSORS

- A. See Section 264313/2.2.

2.6 ACCESSORY COMPONENTS AND FEATURES

- A. Accessory Set: Include tools and miscellaneous items required for overcurrent protective device test, inspection, maintenance, and operation.
- B. Portable Test Set: For testing functions of solid-state trip devices without removing from panelboard. Include relay and meter test plugs suitable for testing panelboard meters and switchboard class relays.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store panelboards according to NEMA PB 1.1.
- B. Examine panelboards before installation. Reject panelboards that are damaged or rusted or have been subjected to water saturation.
- C. Examine elements and surfaces to receive panelboards for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install panelboards and accessories according to NEMA PB 1.1.

- B. Floor mounted panelboards: Install panelboards on concrete bases, 4-inch (100-mm) nominal thickness. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete"
 - 1. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around full perimeter of base.
 - 2. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 - 3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to panelboards.
 - 5. Attach panelboard to the vertical finished or structural surface behind the panelboard. Where there is no surface, provide a structural steel rack.
- C. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from panelboards.
- D. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- E. Mount panelboard cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box.
- F. Mount recessed panelboards with fronts uniformly flush with wall finish and mating with back box.
- G. Install overcurrent protective devices and controllers not already factory installed.
 - 1. Set field-adjustable, circuit-breaker trip ranges.
- H. Install filler plates in unused spaces.
- I. Stub four 1-inch empty conduits from panelboard into accessible ceiling space or space designated to be ceiling space in the future. Stub four 1-inch empty conduits into raised floor space or below slab not on grade.
- J. Arrange conductors in gutters into groups and bundle and wrap with wire ties after completing load balancing.
- K. Comply with NECA 1.
- L. Mount top of trim 74 inches (1880 mm) above finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.
- M. Re-Torque: Once in final location, carefully re-torque all connections with a torque wrench, to match manufacturers recommendations. If equipment is dismantled, it must be re-inspected and re-certified by a nationally recognized testing laboratory, acceptable to the Engineer and the Authority Having Jurisdiction.
- N. Aluminum Cable Connections: If aluminum wire is permitted in Division 26, section "Conductors and Cables", circumferential compression type lugs are required for all

terminations on aluminum wire. Where screw type lugs are used, it will be necessary to convert from aluminum to copper wiring before connection. This can be done by use of T & B or IlSCO, compression connectors. Adequate wiring space must be provided for connectors, if used.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs complying with Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Create a directory to indicate installed circuit loads after balancing panelboard loads; incorporate Owner's final room designations. Obtain approval before installing. Use a computer or typewriter to create directory; handwritten directories are not acceptable.
- C. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- D. Device Nameplates: Label each branch circuit device in distribution panelboards with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- B. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
 - 1. Test insulation resistance for each panelboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
 - 2. Test continuity of each circuit.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
 - 2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies panelboards included and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust moving parts and operable component to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

- B. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as specified in Division 26 Section "Power System Studies."
- C. Load Balancing: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, measure load balancing and make circuit changes.
 - 1. Measure as directed during period of normal system loading.
 - 2. Perform load-balancing circuit changes outside normal occupancy/working schedule of the facility and at time directed. Avoid disrupting critical 24-hour services such as security and data equipment.
 - 3. After circuit changes, recheck loads during normal load period. Record all load readings before and after changes and submit test records.
 - 4. Tolerance: Difference exceeding 20 percent between phase loads, within a panelboard, is not acceptable. Rebalance and recheck as necessary to meet this minimum requirement.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 262416

SECTION 262420

MECHANICAL ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes:

1. Electrical work relating to the work of Division 22 "PLUMBING" and Division 23 "MECHANICAL".

1.2 RELATED DOCUMENTS:

- A. The General Conditions, Supplementary Conditions, and applicable portions of Division 1 of the specification are part of this section which shall consist of all labor, equipment, materials and other costs necessary to complete all PLUMBING AND MECHANICAL ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS work indicated on the drawings, herein specified or both.
- B. The applicable portions of section 260500 BASIC ELECTRICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS are hereby make a part of this section. It is important that you read that section carefully because it expands upon the requirements herein.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Wiring and connection diagrams.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufactures listed.

2.2 HVAC & PLUMBING

- A. Provide all wire, conduit, boxes and fittings for all HVAC and plumbing equipment and final connections. Conform to Division 26, Section "Conductors and Cables".

- B. Examine DIVISION 22 and 23 carefully for any work specified as performed under this Section and coordinate.
- C. Provide all disconnects according to Division 26, Section "Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers".
- D. Provide nameplates on all disconnects according to Division 26, Section "Basic Materials and Methods".
- E. Automatic starters and manual starters (thermal toggle switches) that are to be furnished under DIVISION 22 and 23 are assumed to be shipped loose, install and wire (both sides) under this Section. Some starters may be variable frequency drive (VFD) type and may have built-in disconnects. Provide wiring on both sides. Some VFD's are large and heavy. Provide adequate mounting support and proper working space.
- F. Provide a manual starter (thermal toggle switch) at each single phase motor not furnished with an automatic starter. Manual starters to consist of a manual operated toggle switch equipped with a melting alloy type thermal overload relay. Starters must be inoperative if thermal unit is removed. Mount at motor location.
- G. Provide an automatic magnetic starter for each three phase motor not furnished with an automatic starter as required to suit the load and control strategy.
- H. Temperature controls are provided under DIVISION 23. Temperature control wiring, interlock wiring, and boiler control wiring are provided under DIVISION 23, except as shown on the electrical drawings or indicated differently herein.
- I. Provide "Fire-O-Matic" detector, remote shut-off, and associated wiring for each indoor boiler/furnace/water heater.
- J. Install and wire to electric heating units furnished under DIVISION 23.
- K. Provide power wiring to all control transformers and temperature control panels.
- L. Control valves and transformers for all heating units are furnished and installed under DIVISION 23.
- M. Do not use electrical drawings for location of feeds to mechanical equipment. In general, use mechanical drawings for bidding purposes and final approved mechanical shop drawings for actual installation. However, report any discrepancies to mechanical and electrical engineer for final determination, prior to installation.
- N. Wire all miscellaneous circulation and condensate pumps.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install according to NEMA standards.

- B. Mount plumb and rigid without distortion of box.
- C. Provide supports and nameplates, according to Division 26 section "Basic Electrical Materials and Methods".
- D. Ground according to Division 26, Section "Grounding, Bonding & Surge Protective Devices".
- E. Provide wiring according to Division 26, Section "Conductors and Cables".
- F. Provide raceways according to Division 26, Section "Raceways and Boxes".

END OF SECTION 262419

SECTION 262726**WIRING DEVICES****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including AIA A201 and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Receptacles, receptacles with integral GFCI, and associated device plates.
 - 2. Twist-locking receptacles.
 - 3. Wall-box motion sensors.
 - 4. Snap switches and wall-box dimmers.
 - 5. Solid-state fan speed controls.
 - 6. Wall-switch sensors.
 - 7. Pendant cord-connector devices.
 - 8. Cord and plug sets.
 - 9. Service poles and multioutlet assemblies.
 - 10. Device trim plates.
 - 11. Emergency lighting relays.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 27 Section "Communications Horizontal Cabling" for workstation outlets.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
- B. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
- C. Pigtail: Short lead used to connect a device to a branch-circuit conductor.
- D. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.
- E. TVSS: Transient voltage surge suppressor.
- F. UTP: Unshielded twisted pair.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

- B. Shop Drawings: List of legends and description of materials and process used for premarking wall plates.
- C. Samples: One for each type of device and wall plate specified, in each color specified.
- D. Field quality-control test reports.
- E. Operation and Maintenance Data: Include all manufacturers' packing label warnings and instruction manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of wiring device and associated wall plate through one source from a single manufacturer. Insofar as they are available, obtain all wiring devices and associated wall plates from a single manufacturer and one source.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Receptacles for Owner-Furnished Equipment: Match plug configurations.
- B. Provide additional receptacles to suit the particular equipment served.
- C. Cord and Plug Sets: Match equipment requirements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Wiring Devices:
 - a. General Electric Company
 - b. Bryant Electric, Inc./Hubbell Subsidiary.
 - c. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - d. Leviton Mfg. Company Inc.
 - e. Pass & Seymour/Legrand; Wiring Devices Div.
 - f. Cooper Wiring Devices; a division of Cooper Industries, Inc. (Cooper)
 - 2. Multioutlet Assemblies:
 - a. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - b. Wiremold Company (The).

- c. Equal approved by Engineer.
- 3. Poke-Through, Floor Service Outlets and Telephone/Power Poles:
 - a. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - b. Pass & Seymour/Legrand; Wiring Devices Div.
 - c. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
 - d. Wiremold Company (The).
 - e. Equal approved by Engineer.

2.2 RECEPTACLES

A. General

1. Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6, and UL 498.
2. Provide additional receptacles to suit the particular equipment served.
3. Provide other special duty receptacles as indicated on the drawings.
4. Receptacles mounted outdoors or in other wet or damp locations shall be GFI type and installed in weatherproof enclosures, the integrity of which is not affected when the receptacle is in use (attachment plug cap inserted). Also comply with UL 943, Class A, and include indicator light that is lighted when device is tripped.
5. Color as selected by Architect, or as noted.
6. Catalog numbers are for General Electric Company, or as noted.
7. Isolated-Ground, Duplex Convenience Receptacles: Straight blade; equipment grounding contacts shall be connected only to the green grounding screw terminal of the device and with inherent electrical isolation from mounting strap. Isolation shall be integral to receptacle construction and not dependent on removable parts.
8. All receptacles open to the public shall be tamper resistant.

B. Provide 20 amp. commercial specification grade, grounded, DUPLEX RECEPTACLES.

20A/125V	Duplex Receptacle	GE #GCR-20
20A/125V	Single Receptacle	GE #4102
30A/125V/250V	4 Wire Receptacle	GE #1439-3
50A/125V/250V	4 Wire Receptacle	GE #4181-3
20A/125V	Duplex Receptacle	GE #5362-IG (Isolated Ground)
20A/125V	Single Receptacle	GE #4102-IG (Isolated Ground)
20A/125V	GFI Dup. Rec.	GE #GFR 5342

- C. Provide Wiring Devices for HAZARDOUS (Classified) Locations: Comply with NEMA FB 11 and UL 1010.
- D. Provide TWIST-LOCKING RECEPTACLES: Provide single convenience receptacles where indicated.
- E. Provide heavy-duty grade PENDANT CORD-CONNECTOR DEVICES.
 1. Body: Nylon with screw-open cable-gripping jaws and provision for attaching external cable grip.

2. External Cable Grip: Woven wire-mesh type made of high-strength galvanized-steel wire strand, matched to cable diameter, and with attachment provision designed for corresponding connector.

F. Provide CORD AND PLUG SETS

1. Match voltage and current ratings and number of conductors to requirements of equipment being connected.
2. Cord: Rubber-insulated, stranded-copper conductors, with Type SOW-A jacket; with green-insulated grounding conductor and equipment-rating ampacity plus a minimum of 30 percent.
3. Plug: Nylon body and integral cable-clamping jaws. Match cord and receptacle type for connection.

2.3 SWITCHES

A. GENERAL

1. Comply with NEMA WD 1 and UL 20.

B. Provide 20 amp., toggle type, "Federal Specification Grade" lighting switches.

Single pole	GE #5951	Three-way	GE #5953
Double pole	GE #5952	Four-way	GE #5954

C. Provide heavy duty, specification grade, 20 amp., quiet "AC", "DECORA" TOUCH SWITCHES. Catalog numbers are for Slater Medalist Decora Series.

Single pole	2770	Three-way	2773
Double pole	2772	Four-way	2774

D. Provide Pilot Light Switches, 20 A, single pole, with neon-lighted handle, illuminated when switch is "ON."

E. Provide Key-Operated Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A, Single pole, with factory-supplied key in lieu of switch handle.

F. Provide Key-Operated, Single-Pole, Double-Throw, Momentary Contact, Center-Off Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A; for use with mechanically held lighting contactors, with factory-supplied key in lieu of switch handle.

G. Provide FAN SPEED CONTROLS: Modular, 120-V, full-wave, solid-state units with integral, quiet on-off switches and audible frequency and EMI/RFI filters. Comply with UL 1917.

1. Continuously adjustable rotary knob, 5 A.

H. Dimmer Switches: Modular, full-wave, solid-state units with integral, quiet on/off switches and audible frequency and EMI/RFI filters, unless otherwise indicated on the drawings.

1. Control: Continuously adjustable combination slider and toggle switch with single-pole or three-way switching to suit connections. Comply with UL 1472.

- I. Occupancy Sensors
 - 1. As indicated on the drawings.
- J. Wall-Switch Sensors:
 - 1. As indicated on the drawings.
- K. Emergency Lighting Relays
 - 1. Provide relays in emergency lighting circuits to cause emergency lights to automatically light whenever the emergency transfer switch goes to the emergency position, regardless of the position of the local switch.
 - 2. Provide SPDT transfer relays in NEMA #1 enclosure above accessible suspended ceiling or flush mounted adjacent to lighting panel. Provide one relay for each switch. Provide holding coils rated for continuous operation with 120 ampere contacts. Wire as indicated on the drawings or as directed

2.4 WALL PLATES

- A. Single and combination types to match corresponding wiring devices.
 - 1. Plate-Securing Screws: Metal with head color to match plate finish.
 - 2. Material for Finished Spaces: Smooth, high-impact thermoplastic.
 - 3. Material for Unfinished Spaces: Galvanized steel.
 - 4. Material for Damp Locations: Cast aluminum with spring-loaded lift cover, and listed and labeled for use in "wet locations."
- B. Wet-Location, Weatherproof Cover Plates: NEMA 250, complying with type 3R weather-resistant, polycarbonate with lockable cover.
- C. Single and combination types to match corresponding wiring devices.
 - 1. Plate-Securing Screws: Metal with head color to match plate finish.
 - 2. Provide smooth (unribbed) high-impact thermoplastic switch and receptacle cover plates. Color as selected by Architect.
 - 3. Receptacles mounted outdoors or in other wet or damp locations shall be installed in weatherproof enclosures with key lock cover, the integrity of which is not affected when the receptacle is in use (attachment plug cap inserted).

2.5 MULTIOUTLET ASSEMBLIES

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:
 - 1. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - 2. Wiremold Company (The).
 - 3. Panduit Corp.
 - 4. Equal approved by Engineer.

- B. Components of Assemblies: Products from a single manufacturer designed for use as a complete, matching assembly of raceways and receptacles.
- C. Raceway Material: Metal, with manufacturer's standard finish.

2.6 SERVICE POLES

- A. Description: Factory-assembled and -wired units to extend power and voice and data communication from distribution wiring concealed in ceiling to devices, connections, or outlets in pole near floor.
 - 1. Poles: Nominal 2.5-inch- (65-mm-) square cross section, with height adequate to extend from floor to at least 6 inches (150 mm) above ceiling, and with separate channels for power wiring and voice and data communication cabling.
 - 2. Mounting: Ceiling trim flange with concealed bracing arranged for positive connection to ceiling supports; with pole foot and carpet pad attachment.
 - 3. Finishes: Manufacturer's standard painted finish and trim combination.
 - 4. Wiring: Sized for minimum of five No. 12 AWG power and ground conductors and a minimum of four, 4-pair, Category 3 or 5 voice and data communication cables.
 - 5. Power Receptacles: Two duplex, 20-A, heavy-duty, NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R units.
 - 6. Voice and Data Communication Outlets: Provide type as indicated on the drawings or as directed.

2.7 FINISHES

- A. Color: Wiring device catalog numbers in Section Text do not designate device color.
 - 1. Wiring Devices Connected to Normal Power System: As selected by Architect, unless otherwise indicated or required by NFPA 70 or device listing.
 - 2. The electrical contractor shall coordinate with the Architect, general contractor, millwork and countertop vendors as required and provide grommets on solid surface countertops to serve devices below.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1, including the mounting heights listed in that standard, unless otherwise noted.
- B. Coordination with Other Trades:
 - 1. Take steps to insure that devices and their boxes are protected. Do not place wall finish materials over device boxes.

2. Keep outlet boxes free of plaster, drywall joint compound, mortar, cement, concrete, dust, paint, and other material that may contaminate the raceway system, conductors, and cables.
3. Install device boxes in brick or block walls so that the cover plate does not cross a joint unless the joint is troweled flush with the face of the wall.
4. Install wiring devices after all wall preparation, including painting, is complete.

C. Conductors:

1. Do not strip insulation from conductors until just before they are spliced or terminated on devices.
2. Strip insulation evenly around the conductor using tools designed for the purpose. Avoid scoring or nicking of solid wire or cutting strands from stranded wire.
3. The length of free conductors at outlets for devices shall meet provisions of NFPA 70, Article 300, without pigtails.
4. Existing Conductors:
 - a. Cut back and pigtail, or replace all damaged conductors.
 - b. Straighten conductors that remain and remove corrosion and foreign matter.
 - c. Pigtailing existing conductors is permitted provided the outlet box is large enough.

D. Device Installation:

1. Replace all devices that have been in temporary use during construction or that show signs that they were installed before building finishing operations were complete.
2. Keep each wiring device in its package or otherwise protected until it is time to connect conductors.
3. Do not remove surface protection, such as plastic film and smudge covers, until the last possible moment.
4. Connect devices to branch circuits using pigtails that are not less than 6 inches (152 mm) in length.
5. When there is a choice, use side wiring with binding-head screw terminals. Wrap solid conductor tightly clockwise, 2/3 to 3/4 of the way around terminal screw.
6. Use a torque screwdriver when a torque is recommended or required by the manufacturer.
7. When conductors larger than No. 12 AWG are installed on 15- or 20-A circuits, splice No. 12 AWG pigtails for device connections.
8. Tighten unused terminal screws on the device.
9. When mounting into metal boxes, remove the fiber or plastic washers used to hold device mounting screws in yokes, allowing metal-to-metal contact.
10. Install devices and assemblies level, plumb, and square with building lines.

E. Receptacle Orientation:

1. Install ground pin of vertically mounted receptacles up, and on horizontally mounted receptacles to the right.

- F. Device Plates: Do not use oversized or extra-deep plates. Repair wall finishes and remount outlet boxes when standard device plates do not fit flush or do not cover rough wall opening. Remove wall plates and protect devices and assemblies during painting.
- G. Dimmers:
 - 1. Install dimmers within terms of their listing.
 - 2. Verify that dimmers used for fan speed control are listed for that application.
 - 3. Install unshared neutral conductors on line and load side of dimmers.
 - 4. Install wall dimmers to achieve indicated rating after derating for ganging.
- H. Arrangement of Devices: Unless otherwise indicated, mount flush, with long dimension vertical. Group adjacent switches under single, multigang wall plates.
- I. Adjust locations of floor service outlets and service poles to suit arrangement of partitions and furnishings. Obtain approval of adjustments from Architect/Engineer prior to installation.

3.2 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - 1. Receptacles: Identify panelboard and circuit number from which served. Use hot, stamped or engraved machine printing with black-filled lettering on face of plate, and durable wire markers or tags inside outlet boxes. Brother P-Touch Labeling System is acceptable, in lieu of engraving.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
 - 1. Test Instruments: Use instruments that comply with UL 1436.
 - 2. Test Instrument for Convenience Receptacles: Digital wiring analyzer with digital readout or illuminated LED indicators of measurement.
- B. Tests for Convenience Receptacles:
 - 1. Line Voltage: Acceptable range is 105 to 132 V.
 - 2. Percent Voltage Drop under 15-A Load: A value of 3 percent or higher is not acceptable.
 - 3. Ground Impedance: Values of up to 2 ohms are acceptable.
 - 4. GFCI Trip: Test for tripping values specified in UL 1436 and UL 943.
 - 5. Using the test plug, verify that the device and its outlet box are securely mounted.
 - 6. The tests shall be diagnostic, indicating proper polarity, damaged conductors, high resistance at the circuit breaker, poor connections, inadequate fault current path, defective devices, or similar problems. Correct circuit conditions, remove malfunctioning units and replace with new ones, and retest as specified above.

END OF SECTION 262726

SECTION 262813

FUSES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including AIA A201 and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Cartridge fuses rated 600-V AC and less for use in control circuits, enclosed switches, switchboards, enclosed controllers, and motor-control centers.
- 2. Spare-fuse cabinets.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material, dimensions, descriptions of individual components, and finishes for spare-fuse cabinets. Include the following for each fuse type indicated:

- 1. Ambient Temperature Adjustment Information: If ratings of fuses have been adjusted to accommodate ambient temperatures, provide list of fuses with adjusted ratings.
 - a. For each fuse having adjusted ratings, include location of fuse, original fuse rating, local ambient temperature, and adjusted fuse rating.
 - b. Provide manufacturer's technical data on which ambient temperature adjustment calculations are based.
- 2. Dimensions and manufacturer's technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, and ratings.
- 3. Current-limitation curves for fuses with current-limiting characteristics.
- 4. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) and current-limitation curves (instantaneous peak let-through current) for each type and rating of fuse.
- 5. Coordination charts and tables and related data.
- 6. Fuse sizes for elevator feeders and elevator disconnect switches.

- B. Operation and Maintenance Data: To include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

- 1. Ambient temperature adjustment information.
- 2. Current-limitation curves for fuses with current-limiting characteristics.

3. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) and current-limitation curves (instantaneous peak let-through current) for each type and rating of fuse.
4. Coordination charts and tables and related data.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain fuses from a single source from a single manufacturer to the extent possible.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended application.
- C. Comply with NEMA FU 1 for cartridge fuses.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.
- E. Comply with UL 248-11 for plug fuses.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Where ambient temperature to which fuses are directly exposed is less than 40 deg F (5 deg C) or more than 100 deg F (38 deg C), apply manufacturer's ambient temperature adjustment factors to fuse ratings.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate fuse ratings with utilization equipment nameplate limitations of maximum fuse size and with system short-circuit current levels.

1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 1. Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than 3 of each size and type.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:
 1. Cooper Bussmann, Inc.
 2. Edison Fuse, Inc.
 3. Ferraz Shawmut, Inc.
 4. Littelfuse, Inc.
 5. Gould
 6. Equal approved by Engineer.

2.2 CARTRIDGE FUSES

- A. Characteristics: NEMA FU 1, nonrenewable cartridge fuses with voltage ratings consistent with circuit voltages, at class and current rating indicated.

2.3 SPARE-FUSE CABINET

- A. Characteristics: Wall-mounted steel unit with full-length, recessed piano-hinged door and key-coded cam lock and pull.
 - 1. Size: Adequate for storage of spare fuses specified with 15 percent spare capacity minimum.
 - 2. Finish: Gray, baked enamel.
 - 3. Identification: "SPARE FUSES" in 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) high letters on exterior of door.
 - 4. Fuse Pullers: For each size of fuse, where applicable and available, from fuse manufacturer.
 - 5. Cabinet: suitably identified, lockable, compartmented, steel.
 - 6. Provide one spare set (3) of each size and type used.
 - 7. Mount where directed.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine fuses before installation. Reject fuses that are moisture damaged or physically damaged.
- B. Examine holders to receive fuses for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance, such as rejection features.
- C. Examine utilization equipment nameplates and installation instructions. Install fuses of sizes and with characteristics appropriate for each piece of equipment.
- D. Evaluate ambient temperatures to determine if fuse rating adjustment factors must be applied to fuse ratings.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 FUSE APPLICATIONS

- A. Cartridge Fuses:
 - 1. Service Entrance: Class L, time delay.
 - 2. Feeders: Class J, time delay.
 - 3. Motor Branch Circuits: Class RK5, time delay.
 - 4. Other Branch Circuits: Class RK1, time delay.
 - 5. Control Circuits: Class CC, fast acting.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install fuses in fusible devices. Arrange fuses so rating information is readable without removing fuse.
- B. Install spare-fuse cabinet(s).

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install labels complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems" and indicating fuse replacement information on inside door of each fused switch and adjacent to each fuse block, socket, and holder.

END OF SECTION 262813

SECTION 262816

ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including AIA A201 and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Fusible switches.
 - 2. Nonfusible switches.
 - 3. Receptacle switches.
 - 4. Molded-case circuit breakers (MCCBs).
 - 5. Molded-case switches.
 - 6. Electronic trip circuit breakers.
 - 7. Enclosures.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. NC: Normally closed.
- B. NO: Normally open.
- C. SPDT: Single pole, double throw.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Enclosed switches and circuit breakers shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to Section 260548.
 - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of enclosed switch, circuit breaker, accessory, and component indicated. Include dimensioned elevations, sections, weights, and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, accessories, and finishes.
 - 1. Enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
 - 2. Current and voltage ratings.

3. Short-circuit current ratings (interrupting and withstand, as appropriate).
 4. Include evidence of NRTL listing for series rating of installed devices.
 5. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and auxiliary components.
 6. Include time-current coordination curves (average melt) for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device.
- B. Shop Drawings: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
1. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.
- D. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- E. Field quality-control reports.
1. Test procedures used.
 2. Test results that comply with requirements.
 3. Results of failed tests and corrective action taken to achieve test results that comply with requirements.
- F. Manufacturer's field service report.
- G. Operation and Maintenance Data: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting enclosed switches and circuit breakers.
 2. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device.
- 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA or an NRTL.
1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

- B. Source Limitations: Obtain enclosed switches and circuit breakers, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories, within same product category, from single source from single manufacturer.
- C. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for enclosed switches and circuit breakers, including clearances between enclosures, and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended application.
- E. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Ambient Temperature: Not less than minus 22 deg F (minus 30 deg C) and not exceeding 104 deg F (40 deg C).
 - 2. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet (2010 m).
- B. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Per Section 260500.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of switches, circuit breakers, and components with equipment served and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FUSIBLE SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:
 - 1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
 - 2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
 - 3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
 - 4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
- B. Type GD, General Duty: not allowed.
- C. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Single Throw, 240 or 600-V AC, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate indicated fuses, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

- D. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Six Pole, Single Throw, 240 or 600-V AC, 200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate indicated fuses, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- E. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Double Throw, 240 or 600-V AC, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate indicated fuses, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- F. Fusible switches, 800 amps and above: NEMA bolted pressure contact switches made by firmly bolting the switchblades to the stationary contact terminals and to the hinge terminals and meet UL 977.
- G. Accessories:
 - 1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
 - 2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
 - 3. Isolated Ground Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
 - 4. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
 - 5. Auxiliary Contact Kit: Two NO/NC (Form "C") auxiliary contact(s), arranged to activate before switch blades open.
 - 6. Hookstick Handle: Allows use of a hookstick to operate the handle.
 - 7. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.
 - 8. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.
 - 9. Accessory Control Power Voltage: Remote mounted and powered; 24-V ac or 120-V ac as required by the specific control system.
- H. All fusible switches: shall be rated for the application voltage specified and have a UL listed short circuit rating to match the fuse installed.

2.2 NONFUSIBLE SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:
 - 1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
 - 2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
 - 3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
 - 4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
- B. Type GD, General Duty, Single Throw, 600 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept two padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- C. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Single Throw, 240 or 600-V ac, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

- D. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Six Pole, Single Throw, 240 or 600-V ac, 200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- E. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Double Throw, 240 or 600-V ac, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- F. Accessories:
 - 1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
 - 2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
 - 3. Isolated Ground Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
 - 4. Auxiliary Contact Kit: Two NO/NC (Form "C") auxiliary contact(s), arranged to activate before switch blades open.
 - 5. Hookstick Handle: Allows use of a hookstick to operate the handle.
 - 6. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.
 - 7. Accessory Control Power Voltage: Remote mounted and powered; 24-V ac or 120-V ac as required by the specific control system.

2.3 RECEPTACLE SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:
 - 1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
 - 2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
 - 3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
 - 4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
- B. Type HD, Heavy-Duty, Single-Throw Fusible Switch: 240 or 600-V ac, at indicated amperage; UL 98 and NEMA KS 1; horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate indicated fuses; lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks; interlocked with cover in closed position.
- C. Type HD, Heavy-Duty, Single-Throw Nonfusible Switch: 240 or 600-V ac, at indicated amperage; UL 98 and NEMA KS 1; horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks; interlocked with cover in closed position.
- D. Interlocking Linkage: Provided between the receptacle and switch mechanism to prevent inserting or removing plug while switch is in the on position, inserting any plug other than specified, and turning switch on if an incorrect plug is inserted or correct plug has not been fully inserted into the receptacle.
- E. Receptacle: Polarized, three-phase, four-wire receptacle (fourth wire connected to enclosure ground lug).

2.4 MOLDED-CASE CIRCUIT BREAKERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:
 - 1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
 - 2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
 - 3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
 - 4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
- B. General Requirements: Comply with UL 489, NEMA AB 1, and NEMA AB 3, with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents.
- C. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
- D. Adjustable, Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
- E. Electronic Trip Circuit Breakers: Where indicated or required, 100% rated, with RMS sensing, field-replaceable rating plug, trip indication (showing which adjustment caused trip), with interrupting capacity to meet available fault current, and with the following field-adjustable settings:
 - 1. Instantaneous trip.
 - 2. Long- and short-time pickup levels.
 - 3. Long- and short-time time adjustments.
 - 4. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I^2t response.
 - 5. Arc Energy Reduction via Energy-reducing maintenance switching with local status indicator for circuit breakers with 1200A frame or above.
 - 6. Settings shall be per the power system studies provided by the electrical contractor.
 - 7. Arc Flash Reduction:
 - a. Breakers where the highest continuous trip setting can be 1200 amps and above shall utilize Arc Flash Reduction Maintenance Technology. The unit shall have a dedicated operation mechanism and visual indication that the reduction technology is operating. The technology shall reduce the trip unit Instantaneous pickup value when activated. The device shall not comprise breaker phase protection when enabled. Once the unit is disabled, the recalibration of trip unit phase protection shall not be required. Activation and deactivation of the technology trip setting shall be accomplished without opening the circuit breaker door and exposing operators to energized parts.
- F. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller, and let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
- G. Integrally Fused Circuit Breakers: Thermal-magnetic trip element with integral limiter-style fuse listed for use with circuit breaker and trip activation on fuse opening or on opening of fuse compartment door.

- H. Ground-Fault, Circuit-Interrupter (GFCI) Circuit Breakers: Single- and two-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (5-mA trip).
- I. Ground-Fault, Equipment-Protection (GFEP) Circuit Breakers: With Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).
- J. Arc-Fault Circuit-Interrupter (AFCI):
 - 1. Provide where required or called for.
 - 2. Conform to NEC 210.12 and UL 1699.
- K. Multipole units enclosed in a single housing or factory assembled to operate as a single unit.
- L. Switching Duty: All single pole circuit breakers shall be rated SWD.
- M. Features and Accessories:
 - 1. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
 - 2. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
 - 3. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge lighting circuits; Type HACR for heating, air-conditioning, and refrigerating equipment..
 - 4. Ground-Fault Protection: Comply with UL 1053; integrally mounted, self-powered type with mechanical ground-fault indicator; relay with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, internal memory, and shunt trip unit; and three-phase, zero-sequence current transformer/sensor.
 - 5. Shunt Trip: Trip coil energized from separate circuit, with coil-clearing contact.
 - 6. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional time delay.
 - 7. Auxiliary Contacts: Two SPDT switches with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts, "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.
 - 8. Alarm Switch: One NO or NC contact that operates only when switch has tripped. Coordinate with alarm system for exact configuration.
 - 9. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.
 - 10. Handle Padlocking Device: Fixed attachment, for locking circuit-breaker handle in on or off position.
 - 11. Handle Clamp: Loose attachment, for holding circuit-breaker handle in on position.
 - 12. Multipole units enclosed in a single housing or factory assembled to operate as a single unit.

2.5 MOLDED-CASE SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include the following:
 - 1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
 - 2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
 - 3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.

4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
- B. General Requirements: MCCB with fixed, high-set instantaneous trip only, and short-circuit withstand rating equal to equivalent breaker frame size interrupting rating.
- C. Features and Accessories:
1. Standard frame sizes and number of poles.
 2. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
 3. Ground-Fault Protection: Comply with UL 1053; remote-mounted and powered type with mechanical ground-fault indicator; relay with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, internal memory, and shunt trip unit; and three-phase, zero-sequence current transformer/sensor.
 4. Shunt Trip: Trip coil energized from separate circuit, with coil-clearing contact.
 5. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional time delay.
 6. Auxiliary Contacts: Two SPDT switches with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic switch contacts, "b" contacts operate in reverse of switch contacts.
 7. Alarm Switch: One NO or NC contact that operates only when switch has tripped. Coordinate with alarm system for exact configuration.
 8. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit switch operation; key shall be removable only when switch is in off position.
 9. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with ground-fault shunt trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function.
 10. Electrical Operator: Provide remote control for on, off, and reset operations.
 11. Accessory Control Power Voltage: Remote mounted and powered; 24-V ac or 120-V ac as required by the specific control system.

2.6 DOUBLE THROW SWITCHES

- A. Provide double throw (manual transfer switches) where shown. All double throw switches shall have switchblades, which are fully visible in the "OFF" position when the switch door is open. All current carrying parts shall be plated to resist corrosion and promote cool operation. Lugs shall be UL listed for 75° C, aluminum and copper conductors. The operating handle shall be an integral part of the box, not the cover. Provisions for padlocking the switch in the "OFF" position shall be provided. The handle position shall indicate whether the switch is "ON" or "OFF".
- B. Accessories:
1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
 2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded, and bonded; and labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors. (Provide when neutral is available at switch).

2.7 ENCLOSURES

- A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: NEMA AB 1, NEMA KS 1, NEMA 250, and UL 50, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.
 - 1. Indoor, Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
 - 2. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
 - 3. Wash-Down Areas: NEMA 250, Type 4X, stainless steel.
 - 4. Other Wet or Damp, Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.
 - 5. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncrosive Liquids: NEMA 250, Type 12.
 - 6. Indoor Hazardous Areas Indicated on Drawings, Class 1, Division 1: NEMA 250, Type 7.
 - 7. Indoor/Outdoor Hazardous Areas Indicated on Drawings, Class 1, Division 1: NEMA 250, Type 8.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine elements and surfaces to receive enclosed switches and circuit breakers for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install individual wall-mounted switches and circuit breakers with tops at uniform height unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Anchor floor-mounting switches to concrete base.
- C. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- D. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.
- E. Install fuses in fusible devices.
- F. Comply with applicable portions of NECA 1, NEMA PB 1.1, and NEMA PB 2.1 for installation of enclosed switches and circuit breakers.
- G. Most manufactures of bolted pressure switches make for line entering top and load exiting bottom. Verify shop drawings before running conduits.
- H. Do not mount switches or circuit breakers upside down or side ways.

- I. Aluminum Cable Connections: If aluminum wire is permitted, section "Conductors and Cables", circumferential compression type lugs are required for all terminations on aluminum wire. Where screw type lugs are used, it will be necessary to convert from aluminum to copper wiring before connection. This can be done by use of T & B or IlSCO, compression connectors. Adequate wiring space must be provided for connectors, if used.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
 2. Label each enclosure with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
 1. Test insulation resistance for each enclosed switch and circuit breaker, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
 2. Test continuity of each circuit.
 3. Inspect mechanical and electrical connections.
 4. Verify switch and relay type and labeling verification.
 5. Verify rating of installed fuses.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
 2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies enclosed switches and circuit breakers and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as specified in Division 26 Section "Power System Studies".
- C. Thermal-magnetic circuit breakers:
 1. Test circuit and correct deficiencies
 2. Set magnetic trip at minimum.
 3. Turn associated loads "on".

4. Turn breaker on/off a minimum of six (6) times.
5. If nuisance tripping occurs, set "up" one notch and repeat test.
6. Repeat steps 4 and 5 until nuisance tripping no longer occurs.

D. Electronic trip-unit circuit breakers:

1. Test circuit and correct deficiencies.
2. Set "long time pickup" at 1.0 (Do not change)
3. Set other adjustments at minimum.
4. Turn associated loads "on".
5. Turn breaker on/off a minimum of six (6) times.
6. If nuisance tripping occurs, adjust setting that caused trip "up" one notch and repeat test.
7. Repeat steps 5 and 6 until nuisance tripping no longer occurs.

END OF SECTION 262816

SECTION 263213

DIESEL - ENGINE GENERATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including AIA A201 and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes packaged engine-generator sets suitable for use in applications with the features as specified and indicated where the engine generators will be used as the Standby power source for the system.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Emergency Standby Power (ESP): Per ISO 8528: The maximum power available during a variable electrical power sequence, under the stated operating conditions, for which a generating set is capable of delivering in the event of a utility power outage or under test conditions for up to 200 hours of operation per year with the maintenance intervals and procedures being carried out as prescribed by the manufacturers. The permissible average power output (Ppp) over 24 hours of operation shall not exceed 70 percent of the ESP unless otherwise agreed by the RIC engine manufacturer.
- B. Operational Bandwidth: The total variation from the lowest to highest value of a parameter over the range of conditions indicated, expressed as a percentage of the nominal value of the parameter.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of packaged engine generator indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories. In addition, include the following:
 - 1. Thermal damage curve for generator.
 - 2. Time-current characteristic curves for generator protective device.
 - 3. Sound test data, based on a free field requirement.
- B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 1. Dimensioned outline plan and elevation drawings of engine-generator set and other components specified.
 - 2. Wiring Diagrams: Control interconnection, Customer connections.
- C. Certifications:

1. Submit statement of compliance which states the proposed product(s) is certified to the emissions standards required by the location for EPA, stationary emergency application.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Source quality-control test reports.

1. Certified summary of prototype-unit test report. See requirements in Part 2 "Source Quality Control" Article Part A. Include statement indicating torsional compatibility of components.
2. Certified Test Report: Provide certified test report documenting factory test per the requirements of this specification, as well as certified factory test of generator set sensors per NFPA110 level 1.
3. List of factory tests to be performed on units to be shipped for this Project.
4. Report of exhaust emissions and compliance statement certifying compliance with applicable regulations.

B. Warranty:

1. Submit manufacturer's warranties per the requirements of this specification.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer. Maintain, within 50 miles of Project site, a service center capable of providing training, parts, and emergency maintenance repairs.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain packaged generator sets and auxiliary components through one source from a single manufacturer.
- D. Comply with NFPA 37 (Standard For the Installation and Use of Stationary Combustion Engines and Gas Turbines).
- E. Comply with NFPA 70 (National Electrical Code. Equipment shall be suitable for use in systems in compliance to Article 700, 701, and 702).
- F. Comply with NFPA 110 (Emergency and Standby Power Systems) requirements for Level 1 emergency power supply system.
- G. Comply with UL 2200.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Conditions: Engine-generator system shall withstand the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of performance capability:

1. Ambient Temperature: 0°F to 100°F
2. Relative Humidity: 0 to 95 percent.
3. Altitude: Sea level to 500.0 feet (152.4 m).

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Base Warranty: Manufacturer shall provide base warranty coverage on the material and workmanship of the generator set for a minimum of twenty-four (24) months for Standby product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: The basis for this specification is Cummins Power Generation equipment Model C175 D6D for outdoor application. Any changes to the design based on other manufacturers will be the responsibility of the installing contractor at no additional cost to the owner, if approved and submitted not less than 2 weeks before scheduled bid date. Proposals by other manufacturers (Caterpillar, Kohler, Generac) must include a line-by-line compliance statement based on this specification.
- B. Qualifications: Maintain, within 50 miles of project site, a manufacturer direct service center capable of providing training, parts, and emergency maintenance repairs. To be considered a manufacturer, the generator manufacturer must be the manufacturer of the engine, alternator and major components of the generator set. Manufacturers who purchase engines from the original engine manufacturer for use as a vendor component are considered "assemblers" and do not meet the minimum requirements of this specification
- C. The diesel engine shall be EPA Certified in accordance with the Federal and State Emission Laws.

2.2 ENGINE-GENERATOR SET

- A. Factory-assembled and -tested, engine-generator set.
- B. Mounting Frame: Maintain alignment of mounted components without depending on concrete foundation; and have lifting attachments.
 1. Rigging Information: Indicate location of each lifting attachment, generator-set center of gravity, and total package weight in submittal drawings.
- C. Capacities and Characteristics:
 1. Power Output Ratings: Electrical output power rating for Standby operation at 175 kW / 218.75 kVA, at 80 percent lagging power factor, 120/208 V, Three phase, 4 - wire, 60 hertz.
 2. Alternator shall be capable of accepting maximum 791 kVA in a single step and be capable of recovering to a minimum of 90% of rated voltage based on requirements of NEMA MG1-32.

3. Nameplates: For each major system component to identify manufacturer's name and address, and model and serial number of component. The engine-generator nameplate shall include information of the power output rating of the equipment.

D. Generator-Set Performance:

1. Steady-State Voltage Operational Bandwidth: 1.0 percent of rated output voltage from no load to full load.
2. Transient Voltage Performance: Not more than 20 percent variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease. Voltage shall recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within 5 seconds. On application of a 100% load step the generator set shall recover to stable voltage within 10 seconds.
3. Steady-State Frequency Operational Bandwidth: 0.5 percent of rated frequency from no load to full load.
4. Steady-State Frequency Stability: When system is operating at any constant load within the rated load, there shall be no random speed variations outside the steady-state operational band and no hunting or surging of speed.
5. Transient Frequency Performance: Not more than 15 percent variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease. Frequency shall recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within 5 seconds. On application of a 100% load step the generator set shall recover to stable frequency within 10 seconds.
6. Output Waveform: At full load, harmonic content measured line to line or line to neutral shall not exceed 5 percent total and 3 percent for any single harmonic. Telephone influence factor, determined according to NEMA MG 1, shall not exceed 50.
7. Sustained Short-Circuit Current: (For engine-generator sets using a PMG-excited alternator) For a 3-phase, bolted short circuit at system output terminals, system shall supply a minimum of 300 percent of rated full-load current for not less than 8 seconds without damage to generator system components. For a 1-phase, bolted short circuit at system output terminals, system shall regulate both voltage and current to prevent over-voltage conditions on the non-faulted phases.
8. Start Time: Comply with NFPA 110, Level 1, Type 10, system requirements.
9. Ambient Condition Performance: Engine generator shall be designed to allow operation at full rated load in an ambient temperature under site conditions, based on highest ambient condition. Ambient temperature shall be as measured at the air inlet to the engine generator for enclosed units, and at the control of the engine generator for machines installed in equipment rooms.

2.3 ENGINE

- A. Fuel: Diesel
- B. Rated Engine Speed: 1800RPM.
- C. Lubrication System: The following items are mounted on engine or skid:
 1. Lube oil pump: shall be positive displacement, mechanical, full pressure pump.
 2. Filter and Strainer: Fleetguard provided by the engine manufacturer of record to provide adequate filtration for the prime mover to be used, Fleetguard or equal.

3. Crankcase Drain: Arranged for complete gravity drainage to an easily removable container with no disassembly and without use of pumps, siphons, special tools, or appliances.
- D. Engine Fuel System: The engine fuel system shall be installed in strict compliance to the engine manufacturer's instructions.
- E. Coolant Jacket Heater: Electric-immersion type, factory installed in coolant jacket system. Comply with NFPA 110 requirements for Level 1 equipment for heater capacity and performance.
- F. Governor: Adjustable isochronous, with speed sensing and a product of the engine manufacturer.
- G. Cooling System: Closed loop, liquid cooled
 1. The generator set manufacturer shall provide prototype test data for the specific hardware proposed demonstrating that the machine will operate at rated standby load in an outdoor ambient condition of 40 °C (104°F).
 2. Coolant: Solution of 50 percent ethylene-glycol-based antifreeze and 50 percent water, with anticorrosion additives as recommended by engine manufacturer.
 3. Size of Radiator overflow tank: Adequate to contain expansion of total system coolant from cold start to 110 percent load condition.
 4. Expansion Tank: Constructed of welded steel plate and rated to withstand maximum closed-loop coolant system pressure for engine used. Equip with gage glass and petcock.
 5. Temperature Control: Self-contained, thermostatic-control valve modulates coolant flow automatically to maintain optimum constant coolant temperature as recommended by engine manufacturer.
- H. Muffler/Silencer: Selected with performance as required to meet sound requirements of the application, sized as recommended by engine manufacturer and selected with exhaust piping system to not exceed engine manufacturer's engine backpressure requirements. For generator sets with outdoor enclosures the silencer shall be inside the enclosure. Provide hospital grade muffler/silencer to achieve the highest degree of sound attenuation possible.
- I. Air-Intake Filter: Engine-mounted air cleaner with replaceable dry-filter element and restriction indicator.
- J. Starting System: 24V, as recommended by the engine manufacturer; electric, with negative ground.
 1. Components: Sized so they will not be damaged during a full engine-cranking cycle with ambient temperature at maximum specified in Part 1 "Project Conditions" Article.
 2. Cranking Cycle: As required by NFPA 110 for level 1 systems.
 3. Battery Cable: Size as recommended by engine manufacturer for cable length as required. Include required interconnecting conductors and connection accessories.
 4. Battery Compartment: Factory fabricated of metal with acid-resistant finish.
 5. Battery-Charging Alternator: Factory mounted on engine with solid-state voltage regulation. The battery charging alternator shall have sufficient capacity to recharge

the batteries with all parasitic loads connected within 4 hours after a normal engine starting sequence.

6. Battery Chargers: Unit shall comply with UL 1236, provide fully regulated, constant voltage, current limited, battery charger for each battery bank. It will include the following features:
 - a. Operation: Equalizing-charging rate based on generator set manufacturer's recommendations shall be initiated automatically after battery has lost charge until an adjustable equalizing voltage is achieved at battery terminals. Unit shall then be automatically switched to a lower float-charging mode and shall continue to operate in that mode until battery is discharged again.
 - b. Automatic Temperature Compensation: Adjust float and equalize voltages for variations in ambient temperature from minus 20 deg C to plus 40 deg C to prevent overcharging at high temperatures and undercharging at low temperatures.
 - c. Automatic Voltage Regulation: Maintain constant output voltage regardless of input voltage variations up to plus or minus 10 percent.
 - d. Safety Functions: Sense abnormally low battery voltage and close contacts providing low battery voltage indication on control and monitoring panel. Sense high battery voltage and loss of ac input or dc output of battery charger. Either condition shall close contacts that provide a battery-charger malfunction indication at system control and monitoring panel.
 - e. Provide LED indication of general charger condition, including charging, faults, and modes. Provide a LCD display to indicate charge rate and battery voltage. Charger shall provide relay contacts for fault conditions as required by NFPA110.
 - f. Enclosure and Mounting: NEMA, Type 1, wall-mounted cabinet.

2.4 FUEL OIL STORAGE

- A. Comply with NFPA 30.
- B. Sub Base-Mounted Fuel Oil Tank: Provide a double wall secondary containment type sub base fuel storage tank. The tank shall be constructed of corrosion resistant steel and shall be UL 142 listed and labeled. The fuel tank shall include the following features:
 1. Capacity: Fuel for 39 Hour(s) continuous operation at 100 percent rated power output. Tank size shall not exceed 40"W and 117"L.
 2. Tank rails and lifting eyes shall be rated for the full dry weight of the tank, genset, and enclosure.
 3. Electrical stub up(s)
 4. Normal & emergency vents
 5. Lockable fuel fill
 6. Mechanical fuel level gauge
 7. High and low level switches to indicate fuel level
 8. Leak detector switch
 9. Sub base tank shall include a welded steel containment basin, sized at a minimum of 110% of the tank capacity to prevent escape of fuel into the environment in the event of a tank rupture.
 10. Fill port with overfill prevention valve (OFPV)
 11. Tank design shall meet the regional requirements for the Project location

2.5 CONTROL AND MONITORING

- A. Engine generator control shall be microprocessor based and provide automatic starting, monitoring, protection and control functions for the unit.
- B. Automatic Starting System Sequence of Operation: When mode-selector switch on the control and monitoring panel is in the automatic position, remote-control contacts in one or more separate automatic transfer switches initiate starting and stopping of generator set. When mode-selector switch is switched to the on position, generator set starts. The off position of same switch initiates generator-set shutdown. (Switches with different configurations but equal functions are acceptable.) When generator set is running, specified system or equipment failures or derangements automatically shut down generator set and initiate alarms. Operation of the local (generator set-mounted) and/or remote emergency-stop switch also shuts down generator set.
- C. Manual Starting System Sequence of Operation: Switching on-off switch on the generator control panel to the on position starts generator set. The off position of same switch initiates generator-set shutdown. When generator set is running, specified system or equipment failures or derangements automatically shut down generator set and initiate alarms. Operation of the local (generator set-mounted) and/or remote emergency-stop switch also shuts down generator set.
- D. Configuration: Operating and safety indications, protective devices, system controls, engine gages and associated equipment shall be grouped in a common control and monitoring panel. Mounting method shall isolate the control panel from generator-set vibration. AC output power circuit breakers and other output power equipment shall not be mounted in the control enclosure.
- E. Indicating and Protective Devices and Controls: As required by NFPA 110 for Level 1 system, and the following:
 - 1. AC voltmeter (3-phase, line to line and line to neutral values).
 - 2. AC ammeter (3-phases).
 - 3. AC frequency meter.
 - 4. AC kVA output (total and for each phase). Display shall indicate power flow direction.
 - 5. Ammeter-voltmeter displays shall simultaneously display conditions for all three phases.
 - 6. Emergency Stop Switch: Switch shall be a red "mushroom head" pushbutton device complete with lock-out/tag-out provisions. Depressing switch shall cause the generator set to immediately stop the generator set and prevent it from operating.
 - 7. Fault Reset Switch: Supply a dedicated control switch to reset/clear fault conditions.
 - 8. DC voltmeter (alternator battery charging).
 - 9. Engine-coolant temperature gage.
 - 10. Engine lubricating-oil pressure gage.
 - 11. Running-time meter.
 - 12. Generator-voltage and frequency digital raise/lower switches. Rheostats for these functions are not acceptable. The control shall adjustment of these parameters in a range of plus or minus 5% of the voltage and frequency operating set point (not nominal voltage and frequency values.)

13. AC Protective Equipment: The control system shall include over/under voltage, over current, short circuit, loss of voltage reference, and over excitation shut down protection. There shall be an overload warning, and overcurrent warning alarm.
14. Status LED indicating lamps to indicate remote start signal present at the control, existing alarm condition, not in auto, and generator set running.
15. A graphical display panel with appropriate navigation devices shall be provided to view all information noted above, as well as all engine status and alarm/shutdown conditions (including those from an integrated engine emission control system). The display shall also include integrated provisions for adjustment of the gain and stability settings for the governing and voltage regulation systems.

- F. Provide engine start and integrity monitoring meeting the requirements of the NEC, Transfer switch engine start circuit shall be monitored by the generator set's Control Panel and annunciated locally, and on the remote annunciator panel.

Common Remote Audible Alarm: Comply with NFPA 110 requirements for Level 1 systems. Include necessary contacts and terminals in control and monitoring panel.

1. Overcrank shutdown.
2. Coolant low-temperature alarm.
3. Control switch not in auto position.
4. Battery-charger malfunction alarm.
5. Battery low-voltage alarm.

- G. Remote Alarm Annunciator: Comply with NFPA 110. An LED labeled with proper alarm conditions shall identify each alarm event and a common audible signal shall sound for each alarm condition.
- H. Remote Emergency-Stop Switch: Flush; wall mounted, unless otherwise indicated; and labeled. Push button shall be protected from accidental operation.

2.6 GENERATOR OVERCURRENT AND FAULT PROTECTION

- A. The control system shall include over/under voltage, over current, short circuit, loss of voltage reference, and over excitation shut down protection. There shall be an overload warning, and overcurrent warning alarm.
- B. Ground-Fault Indication: Comply with NFPA 70, "Emergency System" signals for ground-fault. Integrate ground-fault alarm indication with other generator-set alarm indications
- C. The alternator shall be provided with an overcurrent protection relay that is UL-listed under category NRGU. The overcurrent protection system shall be coordinated with the thermal damage curve of the specific alternator provided. Submit thermal damage curve for alternator and protection curve (and settings if applicable) for the overcurrent protective system.
- D. Provide a 100% rated, LSI circuit breaker with amperage rating as indicated on the one-line drawing. Provide KAIC rating of circuit breaker as required to accommodate generator available fault current.

2.7 GENERATOR, EXCITER, AND VOLTAGE REGULATOR

- A. Comply with NEMA MG 1.
- B. Drive: Generator shaft shall be directly connected to engine shaft. Exciter shall be rotated integrally with generator rotor.
- C. Electrical Insulation: Class H
- D. Temperature Rise: 125°C
- E. Construction shall prevent mechanical, electrical, and thermal damage due to vibration, over speed up to 125 percent of rating, and heat during operation at 110 percent of rated capacity.
- F. Permanent Magnet Generator (PMG) shall provide excitation power for optimum motor starting and short circuit performance.
- G. Enclosure: Drip-proof.
- H. Voltage Regulator: SCR type, Separate from exciter, providing performance as specified. The voltage regulation system shall be microprocessor-controlled, full wave rectified, and provide a pulse-width modulated signal to the exciter.
- I. Windings: Two-thirds pitch stator winding and fully linked amortisseur winding.

2.8 OUTDOOR GENERATOR-SET ENCLOSURE

- A. Description: Weather Protective Aluminum Factory Skin-Tight housing. Multiple panels shall be lockable and provide adequate access to components requiring maintenance. Instruments, control, and battery system shall be mounted within enclosure.
- B. Construction:
 - 1. Hinged Doors: With padlocking provisions. Restraint/Hold back hardware to prevent door to keep door open at 180 degrees during maintenance. Rain lips over all doors.
 - 2. Exhaust System:
 - a. Muffler Location: Within enclosure.
 - 3. Hardware: All hardware and hinges shall be stainless steel.
 - 4. Wind Rating: Wind rating shall be 180 mph
 - 5. Mounting Base: Suitable for mounting on sub-base fuel tank or housekeeping pad.
 - 6. A weather protective enclosure shall be provided which allows the generator set to operate at full rated load with a static pressure drop equal to or less than 0.5 inches of water.

- C. Engine Cooling Airflow through Enclosure: Housing shall provide ample airflow for engine generator operation at rated load in an ambient temperature of 40 deg C.
- D. Sound Performance: Reduce the sound level of the engine generator while operating at full rated load to a maximum of 87 dBA measured at any location 7 meters from the engine generator in a free field environment.
- E. Site Provisions:
 - 1. Lifting: Complete assembly of engine generator, enclosure shall be designed to be lifted into place as a single unit, using spreader bars.

2.9 FINISHES

- A. Indoor and Outdoor Enclosures and Components: Powder-coated and baked over corrosion-resistant pretreatment and compatible primer. Manufacturer's standard color or as directed on the drawings.

2.10 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Prototype Testing: Factory test engine-generator set using same engine model, constructed of identical or equivalent components and equipped with identical or equivalent accessories.
 - 1. Tests: Comply with NFPA 110, Level 1 Energy Converters. In addition, the equipment engine, skid, cooling system, and alternator shall have been subjected to actual prototype tests to validate the capability of the design under the abnormal conditions noted in NFPA110.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with packaged engine-generator manufacturers' written installation, application, and alignment instructions and with NFPA 110.
- B. Equipment shall be installed by the contractor in accordance with final submittals and contract documents. Installation shall comply with applicable state and local codes as required by the authority having jurisdiction. Install equipment in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and instructions included in the listing or labeling of UL listed products.
- C. Installation of equipment shall include furnishing and installing all interconnecting wiring between all major equipment provided for the on-site power system. The contractor shall also perform interconnecting wiring between equipment sections (when required), under the supervision of the equipment supplier.
- D. Equipment shall be installed on concrete housekeeping pads. Equipment shall be permanently fastened to the pad in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and seismic requirements of the site.

- E. Equipment shall be initially started and operated by representatives of the manufacturer. All protective settings shall be adjusted as instructed by the consulting engineer.
- F. All equipment shall be physically inspected for damage. Scratches and other installation damage shall be repaired prior to final system testing. Equipment shall be thoroughly cleaned to remove all dirt and construction debris prior to initial operation and final testing of the system.
- G. On completion of the installation by the electrical contractor, the generator set supplier shall conduct a site evaluation to verify that the equipment is installed per manufacturer's recommended practice.

3.2 ON-SITE ACCEPTANCE TEST

- A. The complete installation shall be tested to verify compliance with the performance requirements of this specification following completion of all site work. Testing shall be conducted by representatives of the manufacturer, with required fuel supplied by Contractor. The Contractor shall also fill the fuel tank at the completion of the project. The Engineer shall be notified in advance and shall have the option to witness the tests. The generator set manufacturer shall provide a site test specification covering the entire system. Tests shall include:
 - B. Prior to start of active testing, all field connections for wiring, power conductors, and bus bar connections shall be checked for proper tightening torque.
 - C. Installation acceptance tests to be conducted on site shall include a "cold start" test, a two hour full load (resistive) test, and a one-step rated load pickup test in accordance with NFPA 110. Provide a resistive load bank and make temporary connections for full load test, if necessary.
 - D. Perform a power failure test on the entire installed system. This test shall be conducted by opening the power supply from the utility service, and observing proper operation of the system for at least 2 hours. Coordinate timing and obtain approval for start of test with site personnel.

3.3 TRAINING

- A. The equipment supplier shall provide training for the facility operating personnel covering operation and maintenance of the equipment provided.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

3.5 SERVICE AND SUPPORT

- A. The generator set supplier shall maintain service parts inventory for the entire power system at a central location which is accessible to the service location 24 hours per day, 365 days per year.
- B. The generator set shall be serviced by a local service organization that is trained and factory certified in generator set service. The supplier shall maintain an inventory of critical power system replacement parts in the local service location. Service vehicles shall be stocked with critical replacement parts. The service organization shall be on call 24 hours per day, 365 days per year. The service organization shall be physically located within 50 miles of the site.
- C. The manufacturer shall maintain model and serial number records of each generator set provided for at least 30 years.

END OF SECTION 263213